ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP

Engineer Combat Battalion, Engineer Brigade, Heavy Division, Battalion Staff

SEPTEMBER 2003

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

*ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
No. 5-335-66-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 23 September 2003

MISSION TRAINING PLAN
for the
Engineer Combat Battalion, Engineer Brigade, Heavy Division, Battalion Staff

TABLE OF CONTENTS

This publication, along with ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP, 23 September 2003, supersedes ARTEP 5-335-60-MTP, 26 July 2002.

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides active component (AC) and reserve component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (US) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the engineer combat battalion, engineer brigade, heavy division. table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05335L000 and 05335F100.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both men and women.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher-echelon training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-332-68-MTP for the headquarters, headquarters detachment, engineer brigade. This MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the next higher-level training program.

b. ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP for the engineer combat battalion, engineer brigade, heavy division, battalion staff. This MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the next higher-level training program.

c. ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP for the headquarters and headquarters company, engineer combat battalion, heavy division. This MTP indicates the relationship of the support company training program to the battalion training program.

d. ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP for the engineer platoons, engineer company, engineer combat battalion, heavy division. This MTP indicate the relationship of the platoon training program to the company training program.

e. ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP for the engineer company, engineer combat battalion, heavy division. This MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the battalion training program.

f. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are US Army standard and may not be modified.

g. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialties (MOSs) and skill levels.

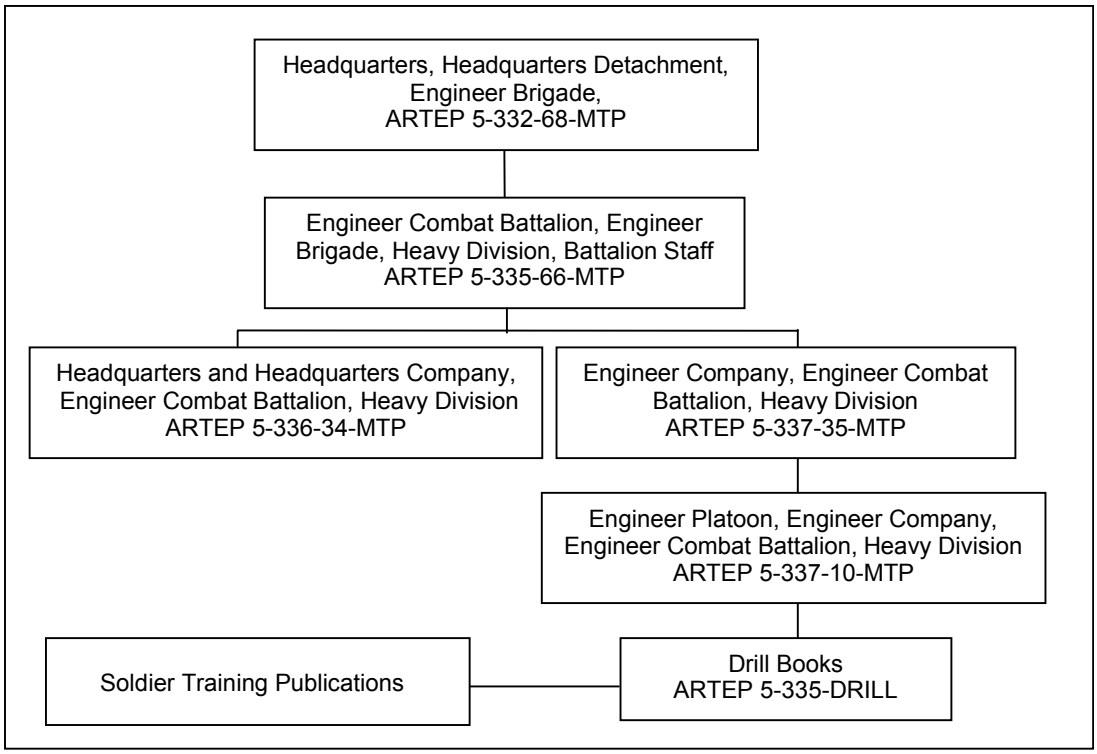


Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of an MTP. This chapter explains how to use an MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercise, consists of a sample training exercise. This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs can be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in a field training exercise (FTX), or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

(1) Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

(a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) Reference. This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) Iteration. This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to assess the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) Conditions. This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to perform the collective task.

(g) Task standards. This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) Task steps and performance measures. This is a list of actions that the unit is to perform to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard. The task step may contain performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step.

(i) GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) Supporting individual tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each individual task are listed.

(l) Supporting collective tasks. This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each collective task are listed.

(m) Opposing forces tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy being portrayed.

(2) Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes local, regional, and global threats and special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, contains an English-to-metric measurement conversion chart.

1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Provide engineer support to countermobility operations.
- Fight as infantry.
- Plan engineer operations.
- Sustain unit operations.
- Conduct general engineering operations.
- Provide engineer support to mobility operations.
- Perform survivability construction.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be

developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the ability of the unit to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support unit missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of unit missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program, developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions, will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. CATS will be embedded in the Standard Army Training System (SATS), version 4.1 and higher. The Web site for this information is http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training. These strategies reflect that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train his METL from this MTP. The training strategies to be provided in SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The

provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 25-101. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed, and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. Safety. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of the unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk Management. Risk management addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5.

Step 1. Identify Any Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

Step 2. Assess the Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-2 is a tool to use for assessing hazards.

Step 3. Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

Step 4. Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

Step 5. Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow-up and an after-action review (AAR). Develop lessons learned.

c. Chain of Command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. Responsibilities of the chain of command include—

(1) Commanders.

(a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.

(b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.

(c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.

(d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

(e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

			HAZARD PROBABILITY				
			FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
			A	B	C	D	E
E	CATASTROPHIC	I	EXTREMELY HIGH		HIGH		
F	CRITICAL	II					
F	MARGINAL	III		MEDIUM			LOW
E	NEGLIGIBLE	IV					
C							
T							

Effect

Catastrophic	Death or permanent total disability, system loss, and major property damage.
Critical	Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage.
Marginal	Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage.
Negligible	First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment.

Probability

Frequent	Individual soldier/item. All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life. Continuously experienced.
Probable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs several times in career/equipment service life. Occurs frequently.
Occasional	Individual soldier/item. All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life. Occurs sporadically, or several times in inventory service life.
Remote	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Possible to occur in career/equipment service life. Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.
Improbable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life. Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely.

Risk Levels

Extremely High	Loss of ability to accomplish mission.
High	Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.
Medium	Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.
Low	Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.

Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix

(2) Staff.

(a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk reduction options for training.

(b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.

(c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.

(d) Assess safety performance during training.

(e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.

(3) Subordinate leaders.

(a) Apply effective risk management concepts and methods consistently to the operations they lead.

(b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) Individual soldiers.

(a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct the situation when possible.

(b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.

(c) Take responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Work as a team member.

(e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. Fratricide. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy its equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is, by definition, an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

(1) Causes. The primary causes of fratricide are—

(a) Direct-fire control plan failures. These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(b) Land navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.

(c) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(d) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(e) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(f) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(g) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

(2) Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.

(b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(d) Oversupervision of units.

(e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(g) Loss of initiative.

(h) Disrupted operations.

(i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

Step 1. Identify Any Hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires the identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

Step 2. Assess the Hazards. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrix.

Step 3. Make Environmental Risk Decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

Step 4. Brief the Chain of Command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

Step 5. Implement Controls. Implement environmental-protection measures into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

Step 6. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

Environmental Risk Assessment Work Sheet						
Environmental Area:					**Rating:**	
Unit Operations	**Risk Impact**					
Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form						
Unit Operation Environmental Issues	**Movement of Heavy Vehicles/ Systems**	**Movement of Personnel and Light Vehicles/ Systems**	**Assembly Area Activities**	**Field Maintenance of Equipment**	**Garrison Maintenance of Equipment**	**Risk Rating**
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous material/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Risk Categories			
Category	**Range**	**Environmental Damage**	**Decision Maker**
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division commander
Extremely high	150-175	Severe	MACOM commander

Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please make your comments on DA Form 2028 or the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP and send to the address reflected in the preface.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. The mission identification table listed in Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table Mission Title
• Provide engineer support to countermobility operations. • Fight as infantry. • Plan engineer operations. • Sustain unit operations. • Conduct general engineering operations. • Provide engineer support to mobility operations. • Perform survivability construction. • Defend the unit. • Conduct unit survivability operations.

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an "X" in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
Develop Intelligence					
05-1-0022	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan	**X**		**X**	**X**
05-1-0023	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection				
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan	**X**		**X**	**X**
05-1-0413	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection				
05-1-1389	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
05-1-1391 Request a Standard Geospatial Product	X	X	X	X
05-1-1393 Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products	X	X	X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A Process Captured Documents and Equipment				
34-1-2005.05-T01A Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)		X		
71-2-0332.05-T01A Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver				
05-1-0024 Control a Hasty Gap Crossing				X
05-1-0500 Control a Hasty Gap Crossing				X
05-1-0520 Plan Breaching Operations	X			X
05-1-1200 Fight as Engineers	X			X
05-2-1200 Reorganize as Infantry		X		
05-2-1215 Fight as Infantry		X		
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X		
12-1-0409.05-T01A Prepare Personnel for Deployment				
Protect the Force				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X			
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination				
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area				
05-1-0510 Direct Survivability Construction			X	
05-1-0522 Direct Combat Road or Trail Construction			X	X
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X		X	
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X			
05-3-0113 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				X
05-3-0904.05-R01A Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-3-2012 Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield	X			
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)				
19-3-2204.05-T01A Employ Physical Security Measures				
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment				
05-1-0050 Coordinate for Medical Services	X	X	X	X
05-1-0604 Operate Combat Trains				
05-1-0606 Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)	X	X	X	X
05-1-1000 Conduct Logistics Operations				
05-1-1600 Manage Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC) and Field Trains				
05-2-1007 Conduct Administrative Operations				
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field Sanitation Functions				
11-5-0050.05-T01A Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)				
11-5-0121.05-T01A Provide a Field Cable or Wire System				
12-1-0403.05-T01A Report Casualties				

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
12-1-0404.05-T01A Perform Strength Accounting				
12-1-0405.05-T01A Conduct Replacement Operations				
12-1-0406.05-T01A Process Personnel and Administrative Actions				
12-1-0410.05-T01A Provide Legal Support				
16-1-1001.05-T01A Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program				
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)				
43-2-0001.05-T01A Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations				
Exercise Command and Control				
05-1-0001 Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	X			
05-1-0002 Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)				
05-1-0003 Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)				
05-1-0008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X	X	X
05-1-0026 Report Engineer Information	X	X	X	X
05-1-0048 Control Combined Arms Breaching	X			X
05-1-0415 Analyze Battlefield Information				
05-1-0721 Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-1-1035 Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process	X		X	X
05-1-7010 Analyze Battlefield Information				
05-2-1219 Conduct Combat Operations	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X	X	X
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process				

Collective Tasks		Plan Engineer Operations	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense
Develop Intelligence					
05-1-0022	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan	X			
05-1-0023	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection	X			
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan	X			
05-1-0413	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection	X			
05-1-1389	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements	X	X	X	X
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product	X		X	X
05-1-1393	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products	X		X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment			X	X
34-1-2005.05-T01A	Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)			X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
05-1-0024	Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	X			
05-1-0500	Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	X			
05-1-0520	Plan Breaching Operations	X			
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers		X		
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry				
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry				
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)			X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment			X	
Protect the Force					
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey			X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				X

Collective Tasks	Plan Engineer Operations	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack				X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack				X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination			X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area			X	X
05-1-0510 Direct Survivability Construction	X	X		
05-1-0522 Direct Combat Road or Trail Construction	X			
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		X	X	X
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack			X	X
05-3-0113 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield			X	X
05-3-0904.05-R01A Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-3-2012 Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield				
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)			X	X
19-3-2204.05-T01A Employ Physical Security Measures	X		X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment				
05-1-0050 Coordinate for Medical Services	X	X	X	X
05-1-0604 Operate Combat Trains			X	
05-1-0606 Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)			X	

Collective Tasks		Plan Engineer Operations	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense
05-1-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations			X	X
05-1-1600	Manage Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC) and Field Trains	X		X	
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations			X	
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions			X	X
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)			X	
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System			X	
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties			X	
12-1-0404.05-T01A	Perform Strength Accounting			X	
12-1-0405.05-T01A	Conduct Replacement Operations			X	
12-1-0406.05-T01A	Process Personnel and Administrative Actions			X	
12-1-0410.05-T01A	Provide Legal Support			X	
16-1-1001.05-T01A	Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program			X	
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)			X	X
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations			X	X
Exercise Command and Control					
05-1-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	X			
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)	X		X	
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)	X		X	
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	X		X	X
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information	X	X	X	X
05-1-0048	Control Combined Arms Breaching				
05-1-0415	Analyze Battlefield Information	X		X	
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process	X			

Collective Tasks	Plan Engineer Operations	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense
05-1-7010 Analyze Battlefield Information	X		X	
05-2-1219 Conduct Combat Operations		X		X
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net		X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X	X	X
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process			X	X

Collective Tasks		Unit Survivability
Develop Intelligence		
05-1-0022	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan	
05-1-0023	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection	
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan	
05-1-0413	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection	
05-1-1389	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements	X
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product	X
05-1-1393	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X
34-1-2005.05-T01A	Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)	
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver		
05-1-0024	Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	
05-1-0500	Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	
05-1-0520	Plan Breaching Operations	
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers	
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry	
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry	
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment	
Protect the Force		
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X

Collective Tasks	Unit Survivability
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X
05-1-0510 Direct Survivability Construction	
05-1-0522 Direct Combat Road or Trail Construction	
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X
05-3-0113 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield	X
05-3-0904.05-R01A Establish Jobsite Security	X
05-3-2012 Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield	
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X
19-3-2204.05-T01A Employ Physical Security Measures	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk Management Procedures	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment	
05-1-0050 Coordinate for Medical Services	X
05-1-0604 Operate Combat Trains	
05-1-0606 Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)	

Collective Tasks		Unit Survivability
05-1-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations	X
05-1-1600	Manage Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC) and Field Trains	
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations	
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions	X
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties	X
12-1-0404.05-T01A	Perform Strength Accounting	
12-1-0405.05-T01A	Conduct Replacement Operations	
12-1-0406.05-T01A	Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	
12-1-0410.05-T01A	Provide Legal Support	
16-1-1001.05-T01A	Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program	
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	X
Exercise Command and Control		
05-1-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	X
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)	
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)	
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	X
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information	X
05-1-0048	Control Combined Arms Breaching	
05-1-0415	Analyze Battlefield Information	
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process	X

Collective Tasks		Unit Survivability
05-1-7010	Analyze Battlefield Information	
05-2-1219	Conduct Combat Operations	
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X
12-1-0408.05-T01A	Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process	X

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. General. This chapter provides a mission outline and describes the use of the MTP for developing battalion training plans. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for wartime missions. FM 7-0 provides detailed information on training management and should be used with the MTP to develop battalion training plans.

3-2. Long-Range Planning. Long-range planning allows commanders to provide timely input to Army training resource systems and to provide a general direction for the training programs. The long-range plan consists of a calendar covering the planning period and the commander's formal guidance. To develop a long-range plan, the commander must first develop the unit METL and conduct a training assessment. These two actions are the two principal inputs at the beginning of the planning process. FM 7-series manuals provide guidance on developing a unit METL.

a. Develop the Unit METL. An analysis of all specified and implied missions and other guidance is the first step in developing a METL. The next step is restating the unit wartime mission. After analyzing the unit missions and external directives, identify a list of tasks that must be accomplished if the unit is to accomplish its wartime mission successfully. Subordinate commanders and key noncommissioned officers (NCOs) participate in selecting the tasks. Develop a task list using the missions contained in Chapter 2 of this MTP, the missions assigned to the battalion by contingency plans, and the missions directed by higher HQ guidance. The commander reviews the task list and selects tasks that are essential to the unit wartime mission. Selected tasks are forwarded to the next higher HQ for approval. The tasks selected are the unit METL. Refer to Figure 3-1.

(1) DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE
1. Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
2. Disseminate Intelligence Information

(2) DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER
1. Conduct a Tactical Movement
2. Occupy an Assembly Area
3. Reorganize as Infantry

(3) EMPLOY FIREPOWER
Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support

(4) PROTECT THE FORCE
1. Prepare an Obstacle Plan
2. Plan Survivability Operations
3. Direct Survivability Operations
4. Defend the Convoy Against Ground Attack

(5) PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT
1. Conduct Administration Operations (Battalion)
2. Treat Casualties
3. Perform Field Sanitation Measures
4. Evacuate Casualties
5. Provide Food Service Support
6. Provide Unit Supply Support
7. Provide Legal Support

(6) EXERCISE C2
1. Prepare an Engineer Estimate
2. Prepare an Engineer Annex
3. Prepare an Operation Order
4. Control Combat Operations
5. Report Obstacle Information
6. Manage Battlefield Stress
7. Operate a Net Control Station
8. Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

Figure 3-1. Sample Battalion METL

b. Establish the Training Objectives. After the METL is identified, the commander establishes the training objectives. The training objectives are the conditions and standards that describe the situation or the environment and the ultimate outcome criteria that the unit must meet to perform the tasks successfully. Training objectives and standards for the METL can be obtained from this MTP, appropriate STPs, higher HQ command guidance, and the local SOP.

c. Conduct the Training Assessment. The training assessment is the commander's continuous comparison of the unit current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and the subordinate commanders assess the current proficiency of the organization on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (trained), "P" (needs practice), "U" (untrained), or "?" (unknown). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit training requirements. Refer to Figure 3-2.

	Training Strategy						
Mission-Essential Tasks	**Develop Intelligence**	**Deploy/ Conduct Maneuver**	**Employ Firepower**	**Protect the Force**	**Perform CSS and Sustainment**	**Exercise C2**	**Overall**
Occupy an Assembly Area	P	T	P	P	T	U	P
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	P	T	T	T	?	P	T
Conduct Logistic Operations	T	P	T	T	U	T	T
Report Casualties	U	?	P	P	T	T	U

Figure 3-2. Sample Commander's Training Assessment

d. Develop the Training Strategy and the Commander's Guidance. The training strategy is developed from the outcome of the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency that each mission-essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance and his training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must—

(1) Review the higher commander's goals.

(2) Spell out in real-world terms what his unit will do to comply with the goals of the higher commanders.

(3) List in broad terms his own goals for the unit. For example—

- Attain and sustain proficiency in all the MTP missions.
- Maintain a 90 percent operational-readiness (OR) rate.
- Attain and sustain a 100 percent crew gunnery qualification.

e. Establish Training Priorities. Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on the training status, task criticality, and the relative training emphasis that the task should receive. Figure 3-3 provides a sample training priority list.

Task	Source	Training Priority
Exercise C2	MTP	1
Control Combat Operations	MTP	2
Disseminate Intelligence Information	MTP	3
Control Combined Arms Breaching	MTP	4
Prepare an Engineer Estimate	MTP	5

Figure 3-3. Sample Battalion Training Priority List

f. Prepare a Long-Range Planning Calendar. The long-range planning calendar is the coordinating tool for long-range planning. It is structured by long-range training events to identify the time periods available for training mission-essential tasks. The long-range planning calendar projects the unit training events and activities for the upcoming 12 to 18 months. To prepare a long-range calendar, follow the steps outlined below:

Step 1. Select the training events and activities to train the mission. At battalion level, the commander must project the events that will enable him to achieve his goals.

Step 2. Assign a time for subordinate units to train. Subordinate leaders must be allowed to develop their training programs in support of the battalion training program.

Step 3. Examine various alternatives to make optimum use of the support available to train the unit. Available training resources must be compared against higher HQ-directed training, battalion-directed training events, and subordinate level-projected training events. Resourcing tools available to the battalion commander are the battalion level training model (BLTM), operating tempo (OPTEMPO), and STRAC.

Step 4. Obtain approval of long-range plans from higher HQ.

Step 5. Issue guidance. Issue training guidance to the staff and subordinate units with the long-range training calendar. This training guidance supplements the long-range training calendar and generally includes the—

- Training policies.
- Types of mandatory training.
- Training resource guidance.
- Quotas for centralized training (schools).
- Training goals.

3-3. Short-Range Planning. A short-range plan is prepared to address the immediate future (three months). Short-range planning develops specific training objectives based on the goals and guidance prepared during long-range planning. The short-range plan adds more detail and may modify the long-range plan based on current assessments. Prepare the short-range plan as described below:

a. Review the Training Program, Current Unit Proficiency, Resources, and Training Environment.

(1) Review the training program described in the long-range planning process. This review determines if the assessments made during long-range planning are still valid.

(2) Review previous short-range planning calendars for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.

(3) Review the current unit proficiency to update priorities.

(4) Review resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

(5) Review the training environment again in this phase of planning because it takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and collectively impact the training programs are—

(a) Personnel assigned.

(b) Personnel turbulence.

(c) Morale.

(d) Education programs.

(e) Mandatory training.

(f) Visits, inspections, and tests.

(g) Supplies and equipment.

(h) Non-mission-related activities.

(i) Other programs.

b. Develop a Detailed Plan of Action for Short-Range Plans. Prepare the detailed plan of action as described below:

(1) Examine the events that are scheduled on the long-range training plan to determine if they are still valid.

(2) Transfer valid events to a short-range planning calendar.

(3) Determine the desired outcomes for the scheduled events.

(4) Analyze the missions to determine the related individual, leader, and collective tasks.

(5) Determine if there are any weaknesses. Select tasks to correct these weaknesses and to sustain selected individual, leader, and unit strengths (as necessary).

(6) Select a specific training objective for the mission and the tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the commander with the training objectives.

(7) Prepare a short-range planning calendar or three monthly schedules. The short-range planning calendar provides a detailed plan of action for the specified period.

(8) Review short-range plans with higher HQ.

(9) Issue guidance. This guidance specifically addresses how training will be accomplished.

3-4. Near-Term Planning. The final phase of planning is the execution of training. Use the short-range plan to prepare weekly training schedules.

a. Review the unit training program, proficiency, resources, and training environment. As in long- and short-range planning, this review determines if previous assessments are still valid.

b. Finalize the plans based on the review of the training program. Determine the best sequence for training tasks, and complete the final coordination of the training events and activities.

c. Prepare trainers, observers/controllers (O/Cs), OPFOR, and support personnel to know what is being trained, why it is being trained, and what their role in the training will be.

3-5. Headquarters and Headquarters Company Training. Planning training for the headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) provides the commander with unique challenges. The most severe challenges are those that deal with time and the availability of personnel. The staff and HQ sections are involved in day-to-day operations and the support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to address the training needs of these elements adequately. These elements must be capable of fulfilling their roles in order for the battalion to perform its wartime missions. The strategy selected by the commander for training these elements must include an effective method of training individuals, staffs, leaders, and units.

a. Battalion Staff Training.

(1) Training the staff presents the greatest challenge within a constrained training environment. This MTP identifies the staff training objectives. The staff has numerous tasks to master to be effective. Examples of tasks that any staff must be able to perform include—

(a) Analyzing the terrain.

(b) Functioning as an effective team.

(c) Exchanging information.

(d) Preparing estimates.

(e) Giving appraisals.

(f) Making recommendations and decisions.

(g) Preparing plans.

(h) Issuing orders.

(i) Coordinating and controlling unit operations.

(j) Supervising subordinate units.

(2) The strategy used to train the staff will vary based on the considerations used to plan training (such as the level of proficiency and the training support available). FM 25-101 contains detailed information for conducting the exercises. Some methods of staff training include the following exercises:

(a) Tactical exercise without troops. Tactical exercise without troops (TEWT) are low-cost, low-overhead exercises conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. TEWTs are used by commanders to train subordinate leaders and staffs to analyze terrain and conduct unit missions.

(b) Map exercise. Map exercises (MAPEXs) are low-cost, low-overhead training exercises that allow commanders to train their staffs to perform essential integrating and control functions to support their decision under wartime conditions. MAPEXs may be used to train the staff to exchange information, prepare estimates, give appraisals, make recommendations and decisions, prepare plans, and issue orders.

(c) Command post exercise. Command post exercises (CPXs) are medium-cost, medium-overhead training exercises that may be conducted in garrison or a field location. CPXs normally use a battle simulation to drive the staff actions.

(d) Field training exercise. FTXs are high-cost, high-overhead exercises conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions. Unit-conducted FTXs drill the staff in coordination, control, and supervision of unit operations. Normally, the staff completes the staff planning tasks before the exercise begins. Brigade-conducted FTXs provide the best opportunity for the staff to combine all of its skills and perform as they would in wartime, responding to both higher and lower levels.

(3) At battalion level, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs; MAPEXs; CPXs; command field exercises (CFXs); and combined arms, live-fire exercises (CALFEXs) to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and makes optimum use of unit field training time. Each unit is different, and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

b. Battalion Training. Training the battalion is a complex task requiring both unit and staff training programs. Normal day-to-day operations place a unique burden on the battalion commander to accomplish training. Elements cross staff lines and responsibilities. The battalion executive officer (XO) coordinates with the battalion commander to ensure that the soldiers are mastering the individual tasks.

3-6. Training Exercise Development. Chapter 4 provides a sample exercise for the battalion to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Since only a sample FTX is contained in the MTP, it is necessary for the battalion to develop exercises for its own use. This section provides general procedures for the battalion staff to use for FTX preparation. Exercise plans are normally prepared while developing the short-range plan. Prepare the exercises as described below:

a. Mission and Task Selection for Training. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.

b. Site Selection. Confirm the selection of a training area.

c. Scenario Development. After the missions and the tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise.

(1) List the mission, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.

(2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercises. These events would normally include the issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistical action necessary to conduct the exercise.

(3) Prepare the exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and the terrain to be used for each event.

(4) Determine the established time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

d. Observers/Controllers and Operation Forces Selection. O/Cs and OPFOR are normally required for every FTX and STX when the Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) is used. It is difficult for a battalion to provide O/Cs and OPFOR from its own resources. When O/Cs and

OPFOR must be provided from within the battalion, unit leaders may have to serve as the O/Cs for their units and the OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attaining the exercise objectives. Ideally, the higher HQ should provide O/Cs and OPFOR.

e. Control Plan Preparation. Develop control plans to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and O/Cs. The scenario is used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan consists of—

- Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
- Detailed instructions for the OPFOR.
- Detailed schedules of activities for units.
- OPFORs and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) for friendly units. Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.

f. Evaluation Plan Preparation. All training is evaluated, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, the evaluator, and the evaluation time. The evaluation consists of—

- Specific instructions for the O/Cs.
- A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each O/C.
- Detailed time schedules for the evaluation and the AARs.

3-7. Mission Outline. The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime mission to FTXs and STXs. This outline should assist the commander and his staff in the preparation of the training plans. Figure 3-4 is a sample mission outline for the battalion.

FTX CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS 5-1-E0001	
Task Number	**Task Title**
03-2-C310	Conduct a Chemical Survey
05-1-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan
05-1-0413	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-1-0500	Control a Hasty Gap Crossing
05-1-0520	Plan Breaching Operations
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-3-0413	Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy Assembly Area (AA)

Figure 3-4. Sample Engineer Battalion Mission Outline

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample FTX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

Table 4-1. FTX Exercise

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. Field Training Exercise. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train its critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in STXs.

4-3. Situational Training Exercise. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. STXs provide the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. STXs—

- Provide repetitive training on the mission.
- Allow training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- Allow the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- Save time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

ENGINEER BATTALION
FTX
5-1-E0001
CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This sample exercise trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the battalion operation, Conduct Mobility Operations.

2. Interface. This exercise supports the task force (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the battalion mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are—

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and/or local training areas by one of the following methods:

(a) Classroom instruction.

(b) A MAPEX combined with a sand table exercise.

(c) A CPX conducted in garrison.

(d) A CFX conducted in a field environment.

(e) A TEWT.

(f) A communications exercise (COMEX).

(g) Simulations and games.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:

(a) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness programs.

(b) Leader and individual confidence courses.

(c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.

(d) Awareness of the unit heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WO) and ends with the compilations of the area damage control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the general scenario of the exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

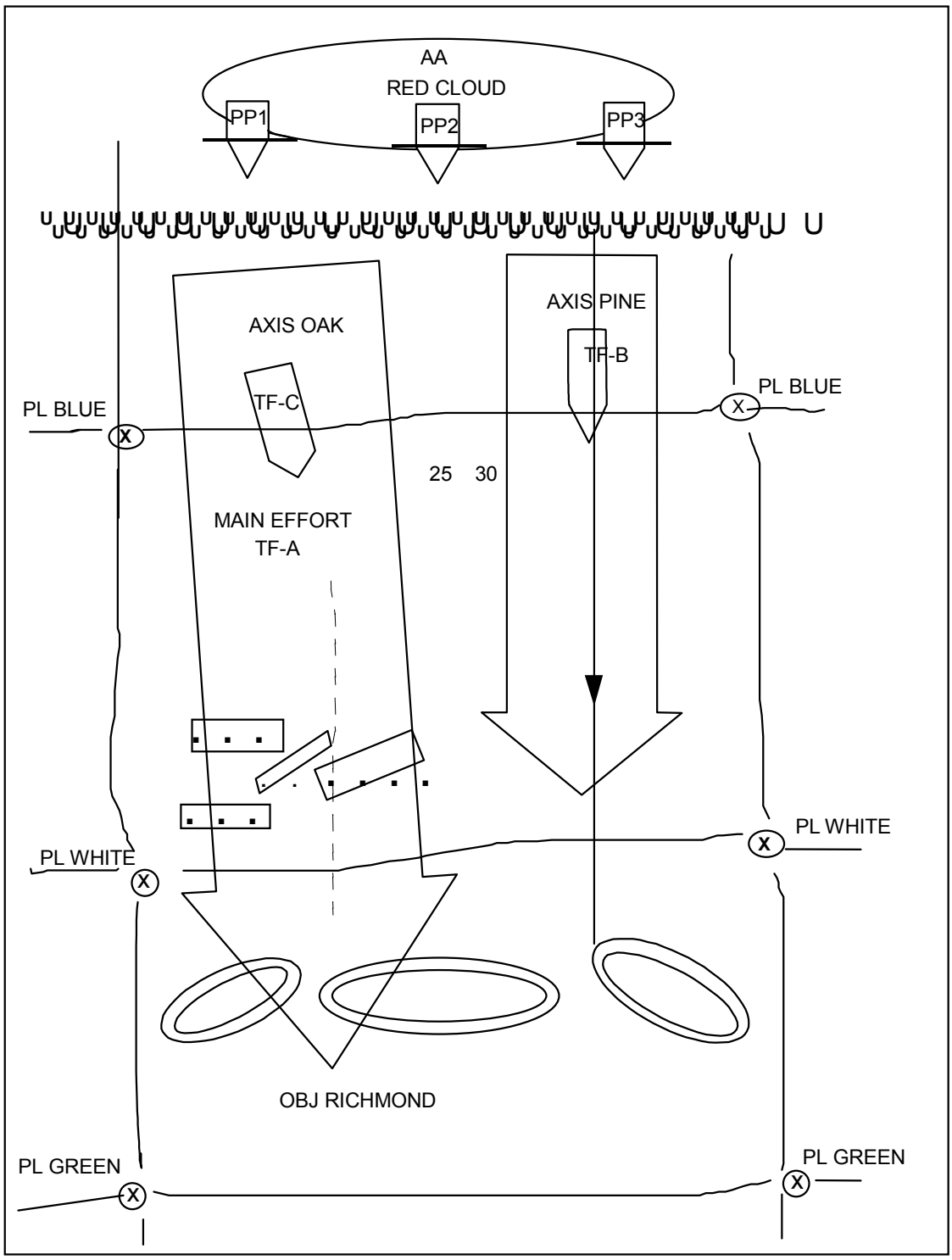


Figure 4-1. General FTX Scenario

Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario

Event	Action	Estimated Time
	Module 1	
1	Receive a Bridge WO	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an AA	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade WO	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade OPORD	2 hours
8	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
	Module 2	
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
	Module 3	
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack, and Coordinate and Issue FRAGOs, as appropriate	9.5 hours
	Module 4	
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	
*	Perform PMCS	
*	Operate a Net Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station	
	ENDEX	
	Total time:	**69 hours**

***These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.**

Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK 403087. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an assembly area (AA) in preparation of combat operations.

2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on the AA no later than 011900 hours.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance from the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.

b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.

c. Detailed Timings. None.

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Start point (SP) NK 243567 at 011600 hours.

(2) Route Monroe command post (CP) is at NK 248560.

(3) Quartering party is the 25th Battalion.

(4) Vehicle markings are according to the unit SOP.

(5) Additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per the unit SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.

(2) Visual signals according to the unit SOP.

Figure 4-2. Sample Movement Order

4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM) indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The battalion is operating in an arid environment. The battalion will operate under threat of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, or III attacks.

d. The battalion should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following FRAGO:

"TF, conduct breaching operations and continue the attack."

b. After completing the breaches, the TF receives fire from an enemy position and encounters complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Observers/Controllers. The battalion commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) who will be the trainer and the primary evaluator can conduct this task. At least one other O/C is required for each engineer platoon and OPFOR platoon involved in this FTX.

b. Opposing Forces.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) MILES can be used, or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are also required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 x 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow an evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. Battalion support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element (see Table 4-3).

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001			
Ammunition	**DODIC**	**Estimated Basic Load**	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (See note below.)			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
MILES Equipment	**Company**	**Evaluators**	**OPFOR**
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to their use) during the exercise.			

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this FTX.

Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001

Task Title	Task Number
Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)	34-1-2005.05-T01A
Maintain Operations Security	71-2-0332.05-T01A
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	05-1-0001
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	05-1-0500
Plan Breaching Operations	05-1-0520
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	05-2-0301
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	3-2-C202.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	43-2-0001.05-T01A
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.05-T01A
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	08-2-R315.05-T01A
Transport Casualties	08-2-C316.05-T01A
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-0317.05-T01A
Provide Company Supply Support	10-2-0320.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Prepare an Engineer Annex	05-1-0003
Prepare an Operations Order	05-1-0008
Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	05-1-0027
Report Obstacle Information	05-1-0025
Report Engineer Information	05-1-0026
Analyze Battlefield Information	05-1-0415
Control Combined Arms Breaching	05-1-0048
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-2-1018
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	11-3-0214.05-T01A
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	11-5-0050.05-T01A
Establish External Communications	11-5-0121.05-T01A
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	11-5-1102.05-T01A
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	08-2-R303.05-T01A
Report Casualties	12-1-0403.05-T01A
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-0405.05-T01A

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section

TASK: Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan (05-1-0022)
(FM 34-130) (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The brigade is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan requires the integration of other members of the maneuver TF. The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The integration of the maneuver TF is required to facilitate and complete the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and engineer battlefield assessment (EBA) processes. A completed R&S plan is provided to the brigade. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The brigade engineer receives the commander's intent and participates in the initial IPB process. a. Sent a warning order (WO) to subordinate elements. b. Recommended the organization of the combined arms reconnaissance team to the maneuver commander. c. Determined the mode of transportation and coordinated with the brigade movement and aviation officer. d. Ensured that the security force, air defense artillery (ADA) support, medical support, and fire support (FS) were provided for the reconnaissance effort.		
* 2. The reconnaissance leader participates in the IPB and EBA process. **NOTE: The digital elements send reports using FM means or through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System.** a. Defined the battlefield environment. **NOTE: The area of operations (AO) and the area of interest (AI) for an engineer unit are generally the same as that of the supported maneuver unit.** b. Described the effects of the battlefield. Did the following when evaluating the effects of the terrain on the engineer operations: (1) Analyzed the defensible terrain within each assembly area (AA) to determine locations which lend themselves to the use of obstacles. (2) Identified where the terrain lends itself to breaching operations at each location. This included concealed and covered routes towards the breach site, and terrain that supported suppressing fire during the breaching operation. (3) Analyzed streams and rivers within the AO. Focused on bridges, ford sites, and areas that lend themselves to river crossing operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Identified other man-made or natural obstacles within the AO, such as railroad tracks with steep embankments. Identified the effect of each obstacle on the movement of different-type units. Analyzed the locations where those obstacles could be easily traversed or crossed. c. Determined the following when conducting a weather analysis for engineer operations: (1) The visibility constraints for each obstacle system, particularly around areas likely to be breached. (2) The effects of weather on the performance of each type of obstacle for the local terrain. For example, how recurring rain changes the effectiveness of a standard antitank ditch in this particular soil type. (3) The effects of weather on trafficability. (4) The effects of weather on dust control. (5) The effects of weather on survivability positions. (6) The effects of precipitation on rivers and streams. **NOTE: During the winter, also estimate the degree to which each water source would be frozen and its subsequent load capacity.** d. Evaluated the logistical infrastructure of the battlefield. (1) Identified local sources of potable water. (2) Identified local sources of barrier material. (3) Analyzed the ability of the local road network to support anticipated traffic (such as road conditions requiring immediate repair and the maintenance necessary to support sustained operations). (4) Identified local airfields that required repairs or maintenance. e. Identified the engineer projects which would most help the local population, if time permits, when economics were considered. **NOTE: Such projects are especially pertinent for nation assistance and counterinsurgency operations. Projects could include building roads, schoolhouses, power generation facilities, water sanitation, or other public buildings and services.** f. Determined the legal constraints for engineer operations (such as treaties, agreements, and legal restrictions) during peacekeeping and peacemaking operations. (1) Included organization, equipment, and standard operations of the threat engineer units in the evaluation of the threat order of the battle. Considered the capability to conduct the following types of operations: (a) Mobility. (b) Countermobility. (c) Survivability. (d) Obstacle placement. (e) Breaching. (2) Measured the capabilities of the engineer units in— (a) The time required to lay each type of obstacle system. (b) The time needed to breach obstacles. (c) The time required to entrench a mechanized infantry company. (d) The ability of engineers to bridge different-size rivers and streams, and the time required for each. (3) Employed threat engineer tactics while conducting each of the above operations. (4) Determined the ability of the threat logistical system to sustain engineer operations. (5) Determined the capabilities of threat weapons to penetrate friendly survivability measures and systems.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Included information on survivability techniques, for example, the threat use of chain-link fences to defeat high-explosive antitank rounds and missiles. (7) Determined the engineer capabilities of threat infantry, armor, and other nonengineer units.		
* 3. The brigade engineer evaluates the threat. Threat models included— a. Schematic drawings of standard obstacle systems. b. Schematic drawings of vehicle survivability positions. c. The standard threat employment of obstacle support to defensive systems. Categorized each obstacle by its effect (disrupt, turn, fix, or block). d. Typical employment techniques for combined arms units during breaching operations. e. Typical employment of combined arms units during river or gap crossing operations. f. Descriptions of mine warfare doctrine, marking systems, and standard patterns. g. Technical information on obstacle system materials, mine fuses, delivery systems (such as air and artillery), and details of construction.		
* 4. The brigade engineer determines the threat courses of action (COAs). a. Began with the maneuver situation templates of the supported unit in order to develop situation templates for engineer threat COA models. Developed multiple engineer COAs for each maneuver COA available to the threat that included— (1) An estimate of the engineer status of each threat COA for the defense. Measured this in the percentage of combat vehicles with entrenched primary, alternate, supplementary, and deception positions, and the likely extent of the obstacle systems. (2) Likely locations and the extent of the obstacle systems required to support each defense system. Categorized the systems by effect (disrupt, turn, fix, or block). (3) An estimate of the mobility support for each threat COA for the offense. Measured this in the breaching and fording capabilities of both the maneuver and the supporting engineer detachments. b. Used event templates— (1) Attempted to use the same named area of interest (NAI) system established by the supported unit. **NOTE: The advantage of this technique is that the supported Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) can easily add one indicator, specific order, or request to collection assets that are already being deployed.** (2) Established separate NAIs to support the execution of engineer operations, if necessary. c. Focused decision points for the engineer units on decisions such as— (1) The forward deployment of breaching teams. (2) The employment of artillery scatterable mines. (3) The shifting of engineer missions priorities (for example, mobility to countermobility). (4) The redirecting of direct-support (DS) or general-support (GS) engineer assets. (5) The closing of lanes in obstacle systems (to support battle handover during a rearward passage of lines). (6) The forward deployment of obstacle teams to close breaches between the first and second echelons.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The reconnaissance team leader briefs members on the— a. Tentative target locations. b. Specific information, equipment, and coordination requirements. c. Actions to be taken on contact. d. Reporting procedures. e. Location, orientation, and composition of obstacles. f. Possible breach or bypass locations. g. Known information about enemy forces remaining in overwatch. 6. The team conducts rehearsals, as necessary, keeping within the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0027	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment
05-1-0413	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration/Logistical
Command Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Tactical Section
Operations and Plans
Administration and Logistical

TASK: Plan and Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-1-0023)

(FM 5-100)	(FM 20-32)	(FM 3-34.2)
(FM 34-5)	(FM 5-170)	(FM 5-34)
(FM 5-410)	(FM 5-430-00-1)	(FM 5-430-00-2)
(FM 5-480)	(FM 55-20)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The element determines the priority intelligence requirements (PIR). The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) develops and implements an engineer intelligence collection plan to gather the essential elements of information (EEI) for subordinate and supporting elements to successfully accomplish the mission. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The S2 and S3 develops the intelligence collection plan. **NOTE: The digital elements can perform intelligence gathering and reconnaissance through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), All-Source Analysis System (ASAS), and Digital Terrain Support System (DTSS). Orders and reports can be sent via FM or digital systems according to the unit standard operating procedures (SOPs).** a. Determined the PIR. **NOTE: This is in the form of a question normally, but it may be a statement.** b. Prepared the EEI to answer the PIR. The EEI included, but was not limited to— (1) Friendly engineer capabilities. (2) Enemy engineer capabilities. (3) Enemy conventional and scatterable-minefield locations. (4) Terrain. (5) Waterways and drainage. (6) Ports and harbors. (7) Roads, including military road classification (MLC). (8) Railways. (9) Trafficability. (10) Airfields. (11) Natural and man-made obstacles. (12) Contaminated areas. (13) Built-up areas. (14) Engineer resources.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(15) Electricity, gas, water, and petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) resources. c. Identified units to collect the information. (1) Used the maneuver units by placing the PIR and EEI in the maneuver operation order (OPORD). (2) Used engineer elements by placing the PIR and EEI in the engineer OPORD. 2. The S2 and S3 implements a collection plan. a. Directed engineer companies to perform specific reconnaissance. b. Briefed reconnaissance personnel on— (1) The reconnaissance objectives. (2) The area or route to reconnoiter. (3) The suggested method of reconnaissance. (4) Any additional guidance from the commander (for example, specific items to look for in a given area). c. Provided elements with forms and materials for the reconnaissance. d. Consolidated the information. (1) Engineer companies forwarded the reconnaissance reports to the S2. (2) Maneuver units forwarded the intelligence reports (INTREPs) answering the PIR through the Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2) brigade S2 to the engineer S2. (3) The S2 and S3 collated and summarized reconnaissance and INTREPs. e. Maintained the following files: (1) An intelligence log recording all incoming and outgoing communications. (2) Engineer reconnaissance reports. (3) An intelligence summary (INTSUM) and an INTREP. (4) Engineer resource reports. (5) Minefield records. (6) Scatterable-minefield reports. (7) Obstacle reports. f. Developed intelligence by extracting information pertinent to the PIR and EEI from the reconnaissance and INTREPs. 3. The S2 and S3 completes or updates the situation analysis of the engineer estimate. 4. The S2 and S3 disseminates the intelligence to engineer, maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) elements. **NOTE: The digital units submit intelligence information to higher headquarters (HQ) through the ABCS.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration/Logistical
Command Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Tactical Section
Operations and Plans
Administration and Logistical

TASK: Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-1-0413)

(FM 5-100)	(FM 20-32)	(FM 3-34.2)
(FM 34-5)	(FM 5-170)	(FM 5-34)
(FM 5-410)	(FM 5-430-00-1)	(FM 5-430-00-2)
(FM 5-480)	(FM 55-20)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2)/Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) develops and implements an engineer intelligence collection plan to gather the essential elements of information (EEI) for subordinate and supporting elements to successfully accomplish the mission. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The S2/S3 develops the intelligence collection plan. **NOTE: The digital elements can perform intelligence gathering and reconnaissance through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), All-Source Analysis System (ASAS), and Digital Terrain Support System (DTSS). Orders and reports can be sent via FM or digital systems according to unit SOPs.** a. Determined priority intelligence requirements (PIR). **NOTE: This is in the form of a question normally, but it may be a statement.** b. Prepared the EEI to answer the PIR. The EEI included but was not limited to— (1) Friendly engineer capabilities. (2) Enemy engineer capabilities. (3) Enemy conventional and scatterable-minefield locations. (4) Terrain. (5) Waterways and drainage. (6) Ports and harbors. (7) Roads, including military road classification (MLC). (8) Railways. (9) Trafficability. (10) Airfields. (11) Natural and man-made obstacles. (12) Contaminated areas. (13) Built-up areas. (14) Engineer resources. (15) Electricity; gas; water; and petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) resources.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Identified units to collect the information. (1) Used the maneuver units by placing the PIR and EEI in the maneuver operation order (OPORD). (2) Used engineer elements by placing the PIR and EEI in the engineer OPORD. 2. The S2/S3 implements a collection plan. a. Directed engineer companies to perform specific reconnaissance. b. Briefed reconnaissance personnel on— (1) Reconnaissance objectives. (2) The area or route to reconnoiter. (3) A suggested method of reconnaissance. (4) Any additional guidance from the commander (for example, specific items to look for in a given area). c. Provided elements with forms and materials for the reconnaissance. d. Consolidated the information. (1) Engineer companies forwarded the reconnaissance reports to the S2. (2) Maneuver units forwarded the intelligence reports (INTREPs) answering the PIR through the Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2)/brigade S2 to the engineer S2. (3) The S2/S3 collated and summarized reconnaissance and INTREPs. e. Maintained the following files: (1) An intelligence log recording all incoming and outgoing communications. (2) Engineer reconnaissance reports. (3) An intelligence summary (INTSUM) and an INTREP. (4) Engineer resource reports. (5) Minefield records. (6) Scatterable-minefield reports. (7) Obstacle reports. f. Developed intelligence by extracting information pertinent to the PIR and EEI from the reconnaissance and INTREPs. 3. The S2/S3 completes or updates the situation analysis of the engineer estimate. 4. The S2/S3 disseminates the intelligence to engineer, maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) elements. **NOTE: The digital units submit intelligence information to higher headquarters (HQ) through the ABCS.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section

TASK: Identify Geospatial Support Requirements (05-1-1389)
(FM 34-130) (FM 34-2) (FM 34-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The staff conducts continuous tactical operations during the development and implementation of an engineer intelligence collection plan. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Identify the needs for standard and nonstandard topographic products that will support the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process, satisfy questions raised in the priority intelligence requirements (PIR), and complete the intelligence annex to the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN) in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The digital units send and receive reports and perform Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) functions using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The staff identifies the commander's intelligence requirements. a. Received the commander's planning guidance and concept of operations after receiving the mission from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Developed and prioritized the essential elements of information (EEI) and PIR. (1) Developed the PIR in the form of a question or statement. (2) Prepared the EEI to answer the PIR. The EEI included but was not limited to— (a) Friendly engineer capabilities. (b) Enemy engineer capabilities. (c) Enemy conventional and scatterable-minefield locations. (d) Contaminated areas. (e) Engineer resources. (f) Electricity, gas, water, petroleum, oils, and lubricant (POL) resources. **NOTE: The following products are provided by the topographic element: terrain, waterways/drainage, ports and harbors, roads (including military load classification [MLC]), railroads, trafficability, airfields, natural and man-made obstacles, and built-up areas.** 2. The staff develops a collection plan. a. Determined the PIR. (1) Reviewed the commander's guidance and intent. (2) Considered the current situation. (3) Considered the mission. b. Identified the EEI needed to answer the PIR. c. Implemented the collection strategy. (1) Assessed the current database.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The digital units request DTSS products using digital capabilities according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). (a) Reviewed the maps, charts, and imagery. (b) Checked the analysis, reports, and IPB products. (2) Requested products that answered the PIR questions and fulfilled mission directives and the commander's intent in order to fill gaps in the database.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Operations and Plans
Tactical Section

TASK: Request a Standard Geospatial Product (05-1-1391)
(GTA 05-02-014) (DD FORM 1348) (DD FORM 1348M)
(SF 344)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The staff has Defense Mapping Agency (DMA) catalogs of maps, charts, and related products on hand, along with the following items: Department of Defense (DD) Forms 173/1 and 1348, Standard Form (SF) 344, and Graphic Training Aid (GTA) 05-02-014. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The staff requisitions the standard topographic product according to the procedures outlined in the DMA catalog. The digital units send and receive reports/requests using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The staff requisitions a standard topographic product according to procedures outlined in the DMA catalog. **NOTE: In this task, use SF 344.** a. Selected the correct volume of the DMA catalog. b. Selected the proper form. c. Entered the proper administrative data in the— (1) Documented identifier (blocks 1 through 3). (2) Routing identifier (blocks 4 through 6). d. Selected the map index from the catalog. e. Identified maps or products to be ordered. f. Filled in the stock number (blocks 8 through 22). g. Filled in the unit of issue and the quantity (blocks 23 through 29). h. Filled in the requester's name, the date, and the demand code (blocks 30 through 39 and block 44). i. Filled in the serial number (blocks 40 through 43). j. Filled in the supplementary address and the signal (blocks 45 through 51). k. Filled in the fund, the distribution, and the project (blocks 52 through 59). l. Filled in the priority, the required delivery date, and the advice (blocks 60 through 66). m. Filled in the remarks. 2. The staff forwards the requisition to the appropriate office. a. Ensured that the form was complete and signed. b. Determined where to send the completed requisition.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Administration and Logistical

TASK: Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products (05-1-1393)
(FM 5-33) (FM 34-130) (FM 34-2)
(FM 34-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The staff requests a nonstandard topographic product through higher headquarters (HQ). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The staff issues a valid request and receives needed topographic products. The digital units send and receive reports and requests using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The staff determines the need for nonstandard topographic support, based on the— a. Mission directives and operation plans (OPLANs). b. Geographic areas of responsibility. c. Availability of other topographic products.		
* 2. The staff coordinates the details of the project with the supporting topographic element. a. Ensured that the request was a valid task. b. Confirmed that the supporting topographic element had the capability to complete the task. c. Coordinated with the supporting topographic element to review products at critical points. d. Established a priority for the project with a firm completion date.		
* 3. The staff requests the necessary products. a. Submitted the request for products through the appropriate channels. b. Maintained a system to track, monitor, and follow up on active support requests.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Tactical Section
Communication Section

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios. b. Annotated the date and time of capture. c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture. d. Noted the capturing unit. e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture. f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).		
* 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ. a. Described the type of equipment and documents. b. Stated the date and time of capture. c. Identified the capturing unit. d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.		
* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment. b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Operations and Plans

TASK: Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion) (34-1-2005.05-T01A)

(FM 34-1) (AR 380-5) (AR 530-1)
(FM 101-5) (FM 21-31) (FM 3-0)
(FM 3-25.26) (FM 34-3) (FM 34-60)
(FM 34-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is engaged in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters (HQ). Contact with the enemy has occurred. The commander provides the planning guidance and a concept for operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) section must identify the commander's intelligence requirements and complete the intelligence annex to the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN) within the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The S2 section disseminates and processes the information and intelligence and employs security measures. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The S2 section identifies the commander's intelligence requirements. a. Received the commander's planning guidance and the concept of operations after receiving the mission from the higher HQ. b. Developed and prioritized the essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) and the priority intelligence requirements (PIR). c. Received the approved EEFI and PIR from the commander. d. Ensured that the appropriate essential elements of threat information (EETI) required for various mobility and/or countermobility or survivability and general engineering projects were identified. The requirements for EETI were developed in coordination with the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). 2. The S2 section completes the intelligence annex to the OPORD and/or the OPLAN in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. a. Prepared the intelligence estimate. (1) Reviewed the corps or division Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2) estimate and intelligence summary. (2) Extracted the pertinent mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) information. (3) Provided the battalion staff with information to assist in staff planning. b. Provided the commander with an intelligence estimate. (1) Noted the particular enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities including engineer capabilities of immediate concern to the deployed battalion assets. (2) Incorporated significant intelligence into the formal estimate. (3) Disseminated the estimates to the staff. c. Prepared the intelligence portion of the OPORD and the intelligence annex. (1) Reviewed the division and the corps PIR. (2) Established information requirements for the battalion security plans. (3) Coordinated with the S3 regarding the use of organic assets to collect information.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Performed the staff coordination. (1) Provided the staff with an overview of the current enemy situation to assist in the staff planning process. (2) Reviewed and provided input to the staff mission analysis. 3. The S2 section disseminates the combat information and transmits the intelligence to the appropriate units and agencies in time for the commanders to plan and mass forces at the proper time and place to successfully influence and win the battle. a. Disseminated the combat information. (1) Disseminated the highly perishable combat information in a spot report format immediately after receipt. (2) Ensured that the division or corps G2 received the combat information. (3) Ensured that the battalion staff and subordinate units received the combat information. b. Disseminated the intelligence. (1) Received continuous updates from the division or corps G2. (2) Disseminated the intelligence to the higher, lower, and adjacent HQ by the fastest means available, such as frequency-modulated (FM), secure, or courier. (3) Ensured that the battalion S3 and all the staff elements within the tactical operations center (TOC) received the intelligence. c. Received and disseminated the enemy nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) operations data. (1) Received and recorded reports of the enemy NBC capabilities on friendly systems. (2) Evaluated the effects of the enemy NBC capabilities. Reported this evaluation to the staff and subordinate units. d. Prepared the reports. (1) Reviewed the decision support template provided by the division or corps G2. (2) Reviewed the division or corps estimate of the most probable enemy course of action (COA). (3) Used the report formats that were provided. 4. The S2 section processes the information by recording, evaluating, analyzing, and integrating it into the existing intelligence to aid the commander in reaching a conclusion. a. The S2 section recorded the information. (1) Maintained the intelligence journal, including the record of important reports and messages that have been received and transmitted and the actions taken in response, covering a 24-hour period. (2) Posted the situation map (SITMAP) with information and intelligence aspects of the current disposition and activities of the enemy. b. The S2 section evaluated the information. (1) Determined if the information was pertinent. (2) Verified the reliability of the source or agency. (3) Validated the credibility of the information. c. The S2 section analyzed the information and intelligence. (1) Integrated the incoming intelligence with the information in the database. (2) Assessed the information and the intelligence. (3) Formulated and test hypothesized about enemy activities or the impact of the area of operations (AO) characteristics on the mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Formulated conclusions based on available information of the enemy situation, disposition, and probable COA. **NOTE: The conclusion should be the meaning of the information in relation to the AO, the enemy information, and the enemy use of tactical deception or counter deception.** 5. The S2 section employs security measures to ensure that the classified intelligence information is protected and access is denied to the threat. a. Coordinated the personnel security clearance program. (1) Coordinated with the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) and the S3 to determine the degree of security clearance required for each duty position in the HQ and subordinate units. (2) Supervised the submission of the appropriate forms, documents, and requests for security clearance. (3) Maintained a roster of unit personnel, indicating their security clearance level. Distributed copies to the HQ and subordinate units, as required. b. Administered the information security program. (1) Ensured that the classification of the documents was monitored. (2) Ensured that the access, dissemination, and accounting procedures for classified documents were established by the HQ. Ensured that these procedures were monitored in subordinate units. (3) Supervised and monitored the storage and safekeeping of the classified information in the HQ and subordinate units. c. Administered the sensitive compartmented information (SCI) security program. (1) Prepared, along with the HQ commander, a physical-security plan for inside the battalion TOC. (2) Established a program to control access to the facilities. (3) Advised the HQ commander on the threat to ensure that an adequate security force was provided to the TOC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Unit Ministry Team
Battalion
Administration/Logistical
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)
(AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-33)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-19.30)
(FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the elements main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures. a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians. c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection. d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information. e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.		
2. The element performs camouflage discipline. a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation. b. Moved on covered and concealed routes. c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick. d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.		
3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater. a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position. b. Camouflaged earth berms. c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were erected.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads. e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions. f. Ensured that vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted. g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage. h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection. 4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC). a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy. b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures. c. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence. d. Followed procedures for operations during jamming. e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service. f. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). 5. The element employs physical security measures. a. Employed observation posts (OPs). b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols. c. Followed stand-to procedures. d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted. e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire. f. Used the challenge and password. g. Limited access into the area of the unit. h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. i. Picked up litter. j. Employed air guards. * 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Tactical Section
Operations and Plans
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Command Section
Battalion

TASK: Control a Hasty Gap Crossing (05-1-0024)
(FM 90-13) (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer battalion is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. A requirement to cross a natural gap is identified during planning. The tactical situation permits the brigade to conduct its own crossing without loss of momentum. Organic gap crossing equipment and blade assets are available to the brigade. A gap crossing plan has been formulated. The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The engineer battalion successfully establishes the required number of crossing sites to facilitate the brigade crossing the gap according to the timelines in the gap crossing plan. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The battalion staff receives the mission to prepare for offensive movement and conduct a hasty gap crossing. **NOTE: The digital elements can conduct collaborative planning and send orders and reports using FM or digital means according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).** a. Determined the types of gaps to be crossed based on the reconnaissance reports. b. Performed the military decision-making process with the maneuver staff. c. Completed the staff estimate, allowing the 1/3- to 2/3-planning factor for the maneuver unit. d. Performed intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) of the movement routes. **NOTE: A hasty gap crossing is a continuation of an attack across water or dry gap obstacles with no intentional pause at the obstacle to prepare. There is no loss in momentum. This is possible when enemy resistance is weak.** e. Performed a map reconnaissance of the routes for possible crossing sites. f. Coordinated support requirements from the fire support officer (FSO) and the maneuver unit. **NOTE: The staff requests artillery support for the crossing.** g. Advised the maneuver commander on the task organization for the hasty crossing. **NOTE: The digital units request Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) and All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) products to analyze the mission and possible enemy positions.**		
2. The battalion staff plans for the hasty gap crossing.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Planned the required crossing assets to be task-organized in the maneuver formation for quick execution of the hasty crossing. b. Planned for the reconnaissance assets to provide updated crossing site information, to include the enemy situation and the gap width, length, depth, and stream velocity. **NOTE: The staff continues to analyze changes in the situation during the execution and plan for alternate courses of action (COAs).** c. Determined the number of crossing sites required to pass a brigade-size element based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. **NOTE: The digital units send updated information on the crossing site and lanes. Crossing site locations are placed on digital overlays to update the situational awareness (SA).**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0411.05-R01A	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Tactical Section

TASK: Plan Breaching Operations (05-1-0520)
(FM 3-34.2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The maneuver brigade is in continuous offensive operations. Scouts and lead elements of the brigade encounter enemy obstacles, and in-stride breach efforts have failed, thus requiring a brigade deliberate breach. The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The engineer battalion staff plans breaching operations according to the commander's intent to allow for the projection of combat power and follow-on troops across the complex obstacle. The digital elements send and receive reports and orders using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and staff receive the mission. **NOTE: Digital elements perform collaborative planning and send and receive reports digitally according to the element standing operating procedure (SOP).**		
* 2. The commander and staff use detailed reverse planning to perform the engineer estimates. **NOTE: During a brigade deliberate breach, several lanes normally need to be opened simultaneously through the obstacle to facilitate the passage of assault forces. The number of lanes required is driven by the actions on the objective (size of the assault force). The operation may also require several obstacles to be reduced at various locations throughout the area of operations (AO), either simultaneously or in succession.** **NOTE: The digital elements populate the Maneuver Control System (MCS) and the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with breach locations and lanes.**		
* 3. The brigade engineer and staff perform an engineer battlefield assessment (EBA). a. Included the following information in the EBA: (1) The terrain analysis. (2) The enemy mission and mobility/survivability (M/S) capabilities that use intelligence information. (3) Friendly mission and M/S capabilities. b. Integrated engineer reconnaissance teams into the brigade reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan and effort. c. Validated enemy template and obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS) and updated as needed. d. Developed the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) throughout the depth of the attack. e. Determined the anticipated mobility requirements of all aspects (support, assault, and breach forces) of the breaching element. (1) Prioritized requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Task organized the reduction assets against these priorities. f. Analyzed the terrain using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) and the MCS to assist the brigade staff in selecting— (1) Support by fire or attack by fire (SBF/ABF) positions. (2) Reduction sites. (3) Observation posts (OPs) for the reconnaissance. (4) Observation locations. (5) Routes and avenues of approach. (6) Scatterable mine (SCATMINE) targets. 4. The assistant brigade engineer (ABE), the engineer Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), and the brigade S2 merge the engineer and command estimates. a. Determined OBSTINTEL requirements. b. Recommended the priority intelligence requirements (PIR). 5. The brigade engineer and staff war game the breach with the brigade staff. The determined— a. The timing and intent of fire support (FS) for the breaching force. b. Points of penetration (POP). c. The critical friendly zones (CFZs). d. The phased time line of the breach, including movement to the obstacle and the timing of all suppress, obscure, secure, and reduce (SOSR) forces. e. Intelligence electronic warfare probabilities and abilities. f. The air defense artillery (ADA) coverage. g. The close-air support (CAS) availability and timing. h. Control measures to perform the breaching operation, including the responsibilities of the support, breach, and assault forces. i. Additional support requirements from higher headquarters (HQ). j. The forward passage of lines (FPOL) of the follow-on forces. * 6. The brigade engineer and staff, with the brigade staff, determine the course of action (COA). a. Used the reverse-planning process. b. Included the task organization of the following: (1) The support, breach, and assault forces. (2) Routes and assault positions. (3) The quantity and spacing of the lanes. (4) The command and control (C2). (5) Maneuver and fire-control measures. (6) Actions of the follow-on forces. * 7. The engineer commander and staff create and publish orders. * 8. The brigade engineer and staff, with the brigade staff, brief the order and supervise the conduct of combined arms rehearsals. Included the following contingencies: a. Possible counterattacks (CATKs). b. Enemy indirect fire. c. Nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attacks. d. Situational obstacles.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-3060	Conduct a Breach of a Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations
052-194-4007	Execute a Complex Obstacle Breach

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire
05-6-0125	Plan Engineer Mobility Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Operations and Plans

TASK: Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)
(FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is performing continuous tactical operations in all weather conditions. The commanding general directs the battalion to fight as engineers. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: According to the battalion standing operating procedure (SOP), the engineer battalion reorganizes as an engineer or infantry battalion within the required period of time. All equipment and personnel not used in this role move to an equipment park or are attached to another unit. The reorganized battalion receives augmentation from air defense, fire support, antitank units, and a medical element if available. The digital units send and receive information via frequency-modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The battalion commander assigns the unit fire support officer (FSO). **NOTE: The digital units use the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to perform collaborative planning and send and receive orders, reports, and requests according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).** 2. The FSO coordinates immediately for air defense artillery, artillery support, and other necessary support for the unit. 3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) updates the personnel status and requests personnel to bring the battalion to its authorized strength if required. 4. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) organizes scout elements from organic assets to accomplish the assigned missions if necessary. 5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepares for infantry-type missions. a. Requested any support that the FSO needed (such as air defense artillery, mortars, field artillery, and antitank elements). b. Initiated the estimation process for infantry-type missions. c. Designated the company assembly areas (AAs). 6. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) prepares field and combat trains. a. Organized a support platoon consisting of all fuel, ammunition, and cargo-hauling assets to support the new needs of the line company. b. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged areas according to the tactical situation. c. Requested any additional Class V supplies (ammunition) that were required by organic weapons and antitank systems, as necessary. d. Consolidated unit mess and maintenance assets under the battalion control in the field trains. e. Designated the location of the engineer equipment park and the controlling team chief, if necessary.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Located the equipment park in a covered and concealed position. (2) Located the equipment park on defendable terrain.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0606	Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-1126	Coordinate for Organizational Maintenance Support
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Reorganize as Infantry (05-2-1200)
(FM 7-10) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion commander directs the unit to reorganize as infantry in a contemporary operating environment. A time schedule is provided. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company reorganizes into combat trains and combat elements. The company is prepared to conduct infantry operations within the specified time requirements. The digital units can send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company commander initiates a reorganization. a. Issued a warning order (WO) and performed troop-leading procedures. (1) Developed a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) while subordinate units prepared for infantry operations. (2) Conducted a reconnaissance in order to complete the plan and verbally issued the completed order in a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) format. (3) Conducted the appropriate equipment and troop inspections. b. Evaluated the status of the ongoing engineer missions and issued instructions for the termination of those missions. c. Organized the company into two elements (combat and combat trains), designated the composition of each element, and determined the assembly location and time for each element. d. Assigned command and control (C2) responsibilities for each combat element.		
* 2. The company commander organizes the combat elements. a. Retained the existing organizational structure of the engineer platoon as the basic fighting element. **NOTE: Platoons are configured internally according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).** b. Coordinated with battalion personnel for augmentation from maneuver and fire support elements. c. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans to incorporate them within the combat element, and determined their missions. Coordinated the command and support relationships and the combat service support (CSS) requirements and procedures. d. Assembled the combat element in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the designated time.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. The company commander organizes the combat trains element. a. Coordinated with the battalion for augmentation from combat support elements. b. Coordinated with augmentation forces, prepared plans, incorporated them into the combat trains, and determined the— (1) Missions of the augmentation forces. (2) C2 procedures. (3) CSS requirements and procedures. (4) Requirements for additional Class V supplies required for organic weapons and augmenting mortars, including antitank systems. c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnaround areas and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. d. Determined the disposition of engineer equipment and operators. e. Assembled combat train elements in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the time designated by the commander. * 4. The company commander designates the composition of combat and combat trains elements. * 5. The company commander reports that the unit is prepared to receive infantry missions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section

TASK: Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215)
(FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment an element has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element organizes platoons for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to higher headquarters (HQ) directives. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means, providing an updated common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as infantry. a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the 1/3- to 2/3-time rule. b. Issued a warning order and ensured that all leaders were kept informed of their duties. c. Consulted with the leaders and made tentative plans. d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for the upcoming mission and incorporated them into it. **NOTE: The company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.** e. Reconnoitered the area of operations. f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan. g. Supervised the preparation for and the execution of the mission. h. Issued the order for the mission, in verbal or written form.		
* 2. The company commander orders the company to conduct defensive operations.		
* 3. The company commander posts security elements to provide local security.		
4. The company identifies the following: a. The key terrain. b. The enemy avenue of approach. c. The location of the company battle position (BP), the company target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area (EA). d. The limits of the company BP and the company or team sectors of fire. e. The location of the artillery preplotted targets. f. The primary and supplementary firing positions which—		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Enabled the company to deliver effective fire on TRPs and the EA at optimal ranges. (2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units. (3) Provided a line of sight to other company or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire. (4) Provided cover and concealment. g. Covered and concealed routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions. h. Covered and concealed routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs. i. The locations for observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon sector of fire. j. The location of existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles.		
* 5. The company commander develops a rough draft of a company or team fire plan.		
* 6. The company commander returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD. a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP, using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA). b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point, using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP).		
7. The company or team moves to the rear and the flanks of the assigned BP. a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions at the halt. b. Manned the company OPs.		
* 8. The company or team commander issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point using the rough sketch of the fire plan.		
* 9. The platoon leaders return to their units and, using hand-and-arm signals, have the drivers start their engines.		
*10. The company or team commander issues orders for occupying the BP. a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions that were difficult for the enemy to detect. b. Checked the consolidated range cards and sketches of the platoon fire plans to ensure that there were no weak points between the platoon or flank companies. c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to ensure that the EA was set on the enemy avenue of approach, covered by mutually supporting interlocking fire from platoons, and located between flank companies. d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure coverage. e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the battalion task force (TF) commander for a final check of mutually supporting interlocking fire covering the EA. f. Received reports from the platoon leaders regarding the established platoon BPs and reported the information to the battalion TF. **NOTE: The reports are submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.**		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors, and ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP. **NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time.** *11. The company or team commander performs tactical planning and plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area based on the factors of the METT-TC. a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force method of attacking a built-up area. b. Analyzed the BP to identify the— (1) The location of checkpoints, phase lines, and building numbers, as identified in the OPORD or FRAGO. (2) Observation sites and fields of fire on the enemy avenue of approach. (3) Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area. (4) Positions that would provide cover and concealment. (5) Location of OPs that provide 360-degree security for a three-dimensional battlefield. (6) Covered and concealed routes into and out of firing positions and BPs that could not be blocked by blow down from structures. (7) Location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, or bridges. (8) Structures that dominate the built-up area. (9) Locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area. (10) Areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense. c. Coordinated with adjacent units for dismounted support (as necessary) and ensured that units were tied in with the company or team forces. d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted. e. Planned for indirect fire in the EA and along the possible avenue of approach, in front of and behind obstacles. The fire support team (FIST) planned the smoke. *12. The company or team commander develops a company or team fire plan. a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation. b. Located platoons and oriented the company or team. c. Developed a fire plan that included the company or team sector, the platoon and OP positions, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protection fire (FPF), if allocated. d. Ensured that the platoon fire plans were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the company or team fire plan for the executive officer (XO) and the platoon leaders (as time permitted). e. Verified the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions, based on METT-TC factors. f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for platoon supplementary firing positions. g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to the higher HQ. **NOTE: Check the complete direct- and indirect-fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense and make corrections.** *13. The company or team commander and the platoon leaders organize the EA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Reconnoitered the EA (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire. Included the— (1) Enemy avenue of approach. (2) Locations of existing and reinforcing obstacles. (3) Key terrain. (4) TRPs. (5) Artillery preplots. b. Organized the EA to mass direct and indirect fire. The obstacles were tied into terrain and hidden to slow the forward velocity of the enemy regiment. c. Organized fire in the EA, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on METT-TC factors. The fire covered the obstacles so that the breaching vehicles were engaged. d. Used fire to interlock. **NOTE: The platoons and the company or team mutually supported each other with direct fire.** e. Positioned the company or team around the EA. Centered one company or platoon the EA and one was positioned on both the right and left flanks. f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference. Used the existing terrain, when possible. g. Shifted platoons or firing positions to cover the dead space and weak points. h. Developed an obstacle plan that— (1) Tied obstacles into existing terrain features. (2) Slowed the enemy movement. (3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy. (4) Included mine fighting positions that could have been destroyed or used to the enemy advantage. (5) Positioned obstacles on the enemy main avenue(s) of approach. (6) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear of them. (7) Placed obstacles in the EA so that the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment, using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned personnel stopped in front of the obstacles.		
*14. The platoon leaders brief the company or team commander on the EAs in each sector and any changes made to the origin.		
*15. The company or team commander executes the company defensive mission. a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion TF commander. b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or mission using METT-TC factors to determine the— (1) Size of the enemy force. (2) Location of the force in relation to the company or team position. (3) Direction of enemy movement. (4) Avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the EA of the company or team sector or the battalion TF. (5) Enemy arrival time at the company or team trigger point. c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP, which included all information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information. d. Directed the company or team to remain in hidden positions until the OP identified the source of smoke and/or dust columns or sounds. e. Ordered the company or team and platoons to immediately prepare to engage the enemy. f. Received SPOTREPs from platoon leaders. g. Reported to the battalion TF commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Controlled indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced. **NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FIST.** i. Ordered platoons into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned platoons to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed. *16. The company or team commander receives SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point if the enemy elements are too strong. The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP. a. Requested FPF, if scheduled. b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or displace. If the battalion TF gave no guidance, the company commander or team commander coordinated with the flank company or teams and displaced. **NOTE: The company or team commander must coordinate with the flank company or teams so that they are not flanked by the enemy.** 17. The company or team commander receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack. a. Conducted prep-to-fire checks. b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading. *18. The company or team commander coordinates with platoon leaders regarding the continuation of the mission. *19. The company or team commander monitors the mission. a. Determined the size, type, and location of enemy elements. b. Identified locations of enemy or friendly mines and obstacles. c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the flanks of the enemy without masking the fire of supporting elements. *20. The counterattack company or team commander coordinates the counterattack route with the defending company or teams (if deviating from the OPORD route). *21. The defending company or team commanders alert their platoons that the counterattacking force is going to attack the enemy from the right or left flank or from the rear. *22. The defending company or team commanders remind their defending platoon leaders of the restrictive fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire. 23. The counterattacking company or team stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL. *24. Upon receiving the order to counterattack, the company or team commander— a. Ordered the company or team to begin the counterattack along the identified routes. b. Ordered the company or team to a position from which it could engage the enemy flank or rear (for counterattack by fire). c. Ordered the company or team to move rapidly to the flank or rear position of the enemy trail battalions and close in on them, firing at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver). Used the following techniques: (1) The tanks, if available, led and destroyed the enemy tanks. (2) The armored personnel carriers (APCs) followed and destroyed light vehicles and the dismounted infantry.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) The defending company or team commanders controlled fire behind the RFL. d. The defending companies of the battalion TF continued to fire upon the enemy and halted the enemy elements advancing from the front. 25. The company or team conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission. *26. The company or team commander reports to the higher HQ according to the field standing operating procedure (SOP). **NOTE: The digital units send reports and unit locations and update the COP to provide SA to units operating in the area.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)
(TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the main body of the element into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the main body of the element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party. a. Selected personnel. b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements. c. Determined essential equipment needed.		
* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party. a. Identified the location of the AA. b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA. c. Relayed the arrival time of the main body at the AA. d. Identified the march order. e. Relayed nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions. f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact. g. Established the MOPP level.		
3. The quartering party moves along the march route. a. Maintained security. b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). c. Monitored for NBC contamination. d. Marked obstacles and bypass routes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Reported critical information to the quartering party leader.		
4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the arrival of the element. a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location. b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body. c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes. d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security. e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security.		
5. The element occupies the AA. a. Moved the covered and concealed quartering party guides to selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces.		
6. The element establishes the AA perimeter. a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. c. Established observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach. d. Established digital and FM communications between all positions using wire communications, if the time and situation permitted. e. Prepared range cards. f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. g. Cleared the fields of fire. h. Camouflaged positions. i. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms and early warning devices.		
7. The element performs internal AA operations. a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established personal hygiene and field sanitation sites. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA.		
* 8. The element leader coordinates with the elements on the left and the right as a minimum. a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the elements signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ).		
* 9. Leaders develop contingency plans. a. Developed an evacuation plan. b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact.		
10. The unit conducts rehearsals. a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A)
(FM 7-22.7) (AR 220-10) (AR 600-38)
(AR 600-8) (AR 600-8-14) (AR 600-8-2)
(AR 600-8-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tasked to deploy to a theater of operations. The element is assigned the responsibility to process personnel for overseas movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element is administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified in the operation order (OPORD) or the letter of instruction (LOI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) plans the preparation for oversea movement (POM). a. Established processing requirements. b. Established support requirements. c. Published the POM plan. d. Briefed the command group. e. Coordinated the POM with the brigade S1.		
* 2. The S1 or the personnel and administration center (PAC) supervisor coordinates POM requirements. a. Coordinated with the Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1), for personnel service company (PSC) support. b. Coordinated with the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) for legal support. c. Coordinated with the medical department activity (MEDDAC) and the dental activity (DENTAC) for medical and dental support. d. Coordinated with the provost marshal (PM) for privately owned vehicle (POV) storage.		
3. The S1 section participates in the POM process. a. Conducted liaison with the POM site commander. b. Briefed soldiers on POM procedures. c. Issued the POM checklist. d. Reviewed family care plans. e. Reviewed pay elections. f. Assisted soldiers in completing postal forms. g. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness. h. Identified nonparticipants and nondeployable soldiers.		
* 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor conducts briefings for family members. a. Coordinated installation support. b. Established the briefing site and schedules. c. Published a family support packet. d. Monitored family support briefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Operations and Plans
Tactical Section

TASK: Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks.		
* 2. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.		
* 3. The element leader and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information. b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air- or indirect-fire support, and medical support and coordinated the element plan with units in the area of operations, if necessary. c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.		
* 4. The element leader orders units to start movement, if necessary.		
* 5. The element leader reconnoiters the operations area and performs a map reconnaissance as a minimum.		
* 6. The element leader completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.		
* 7. The element leader supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.		
8. The element conducts a tactical road march or executes a traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element—		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission required. b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission. c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.		
9. The headquarters (HQ), if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance or survey unit recovery operations.		
*10. The element leader or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.		
*11. The radiological element leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1220	Conduct Fire and Maneuver Operations
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)
(FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader checks the accountability and serviceability of the NBC defense equipment. a. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators. b. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes. c. Identified equipment shortages. d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.		
2. The element assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). a. Donned masks and hoods within 15 seconds. b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes.		
3. Soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack. a. Set up and used collective protective shelters (if available). b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.		
* 4. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis. a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration: (1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted? (2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? (3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Was it day or night? (2) What were current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? (3) What were weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future (see the CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the element status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)
(FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order. 2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack. a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position. 3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters. a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. **NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover, consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.** * 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions. a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4. b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover. * 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack. a. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal). b. Ensured that soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds. c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible. d. Sought additional shelter, if available. e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable). f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable). g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.		
2. Soldiers take additional protective measures. a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits. c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.		
3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination. a. Conducted skin decontamination. b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits. c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment.		
* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ). a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care. b. Reported casualties. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message. a. Authenticated the call. b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message.		
* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. a. Warned subordinate and affected units. b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed.		
3. Soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment. c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. **NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.** f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.		
2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters.		
3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing. a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate). c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments. 2. The unit prepares for the crossing. a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor). b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. c. Started continuous monitoring. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided stirring up dust. b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles. c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up). 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)
(FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission. a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements. c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat use of smoke. d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.		
2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit. b. Determined the wind direction and speed. c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel. d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations. e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan. f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position. g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).		
3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke. b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.		
* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required. a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves. b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment. 2. Designated personnel monitor fallout. a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments. b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible. c. Calculated the optimum time of exit. d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible. * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure. * 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack. a. Without warning, soldiers— (1) Closed their eyes immediately. (2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle). (3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on. (4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling. b. With warning, soldiers— (1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters. (2) Moved to the shelter. (3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times. (5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.		
* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit. a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Reestablished communications. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ). d. Treated casualties. e. Reported casualties. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implemented continuous monitoring. i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Extinguished all fires. * 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational. 4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 5. Soldiers improve cover. a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders. b. Established decontamination priorities. 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, included the— a. Contaminated element designation. b. Contaminated element location. c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign. d. Time that the element became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team). * 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ. a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain the necessary support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon). c. Coordinated with supporting units. d. Requested replacement MOPP gear. e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.		
* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected— a. Provided adequate overhead concealment. b. Provided good drainage. c. Provided easy access and exit (but off the main routes). d. Provided the proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down. e. Provided an area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site).		
5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit). a. Requested operational decontamination support. b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination. c. Established communications with the decontamination element. d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites.		
6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site. a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated. b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element.		
7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination. a. Set up the decontamination site. (1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site. (2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site. (3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination. b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. (1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior. (2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles. **NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.** (3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. (a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals). (b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered. (4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site. (5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators— a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station. b. Washed vehicles. (1) Started at the top and worked down. (2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle. (3) Monitored water consumption. c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down. d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.		
9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange. a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix). b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed. c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material). d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system. e. Moved soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange. **NOTES:** **1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.** **2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.**		
*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.		
*11. The contaminated element leader reports to higher HQ. a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites. b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected. c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).		
12. The contaminated element continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)
(FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area. a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route. b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtained a route clearance and approval. 2. The unit prepares to cross the area. a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area. b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps. c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible. 4. The unit exits the contaminated area. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	**Task Title**
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Tactical Section
Operations and Plans
Command Section

TASK: Direct Survivability Construction (05-1-0510)
(FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is supporting a maneuver brigade that is preparing for defensive operations. Survivability and obstacle plans have been formulated. The battalion commander has task organized digging assets under battalion control. The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The survivability plan is executed and fighting and/or protective positions are constructed to standard according to priorities and timelines. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader issues an operation order (OPORD) containing the construction plan.		
* 2. The element leader supervises coordination with maneuver commanders and on-site engineer officers in charge (OICs) to determine the physical location of the direct- and indirect-fire weapons systems and other brigade assets that require protection.		
* 3. The element leader and staff coordinate for maintenance and refueling support for the subordinate elements using FM or digital communications equipment.		
* 4. The element leader supervises the execution of the construction matrix and adjusts the plan as necessary.		
5. The battalion reports the status to the engineer and maneuver brigades by using either FM or the digital reporting procedures on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and the Maneuver Control System (MCS) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section

TASK: Direct Combat Road or Trail Construction (05-1-1002)
(FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-34)
(FM 5-430-00-2) (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. Roads, trails, and bypasses must be constructed to support the maneuver combat service (CS) and combat service support (CSS) movement in the maneuver area. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and the systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: An order is created and disseminated to subordinate elements to construct combat roads, trails, and bypasses to facilitate the movement of combat, CS, and CSS elements in the area of operations (AO). As a minimum, the order will contain the start and end points, the general route location, lane requirements, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and the completion time. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives the mission, guidance, and works with the staff. He— a. Determined the initial assets available. b. Determined the initial time available for the required construction effort. c. Reviewed the current intelligence picture.		
* 2. The element leader and staff conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and an engineer battlefield assessment (EBA) to develop facts and assumptions. a. Performed a terrain analysis of the area. (1) Reviewed all available terrain information, reconnaissance reports (using the Digital Reconnaissance System [DRS]) and terrain analysis products (using the Digital Topographic Support System [DTSS]). (2) Determined the proposed routes; soil characteristics; vegetation coverage; drainage abilities; weather impacts; and limiting characteristics, such as slopes, waterways, and craters. (3) Proposed the routes, determined the additional reconnaissance effort required for verification, and obtained additional data when required. b. Identified the mission of the enemy and mobility/survivability (M/S) capabilities. (1) Reviewed the current enemy intelligence information on the Maneuver Control System (MCS) and the enemy doctrine template for the engineer capabilities of the enemy. (2) Determined the situation of the enemy and the tentative enemy engineer employment along the proposed construction area. (3) Determined the tentative security requirements for the proposed construction effort.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Identified the friendly forces mission and M/S capabilities. **NOTE: Combat trails may be constructed with organic engineer assets, which are usually made for tracked vehicle traffic. Combat road and bypass construction usually requires assets that may not be organic to the brigade, but may be available through outside resources, such as corps assets, host nation (HN) support, and friendly foreign assets.** (1) Reviewed the engineer task organization. (a) Identified the equipment availability and capabilities and the known work rates of the equipment and personnel to be used in the construction effort. (b) Determined if additional capabilities or equipment was required. (2) Reviewed the availability of accessible critical construction resources and determined what impact this had on the construction effort. (3) Verified the timeline with the brigade Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the supported element. (4) Reviewed any new information received and determined its impact on the mission. **NOTE: This is a continuing process.** * 3. The element leader and staff analyze the engineer mission. a. Determined the specified and implied tasks to be accomplished throughout the maneuver area. b. Determined the total assets available, including subordinate, adjacent, higher, and HN support. c. Determined any limitations (constraints and restrictions) throughout the AO. d. Conducted a risk analysis as it applied to the engineer mission. e. Developed a mission timeline in conjunction with the maneuver S3 or supported unit. f. Developed an essential task list for all missions in the AO. g. Restated the mission as it applied to the engineer effort. * 4. The element leader and staff develop the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO). a. Determined the priority of effort and support of engineer assets. b. Determined the ratio of assets required verses the assets available. c. Determined what additional assets were required and available to meet the construction and timeline criteria. d. Tailored and integrated each SOEO into each maneuver unit course of action (COA). * 5. The element leader and staff war-game the SOEO with the maneuver staff. a. Determined which SOEO best supported the maneuver plan and mission accomplishment. b. Determined the weaknesses in the engineer plan and made adjustments, as necessary. c. Requested additional assets through the proper channels, if required. d. Integrated the enemy engineer assets and actions into the Intelligence Officer's (US Army) (S2's) enemy play. e. Determined the security requirements for the construction effort. * 6. The element leader recommends a COA to the main element leader and obtains additional resources as per the element leader's approval and guidance to effectively meet that COA. a. Recommended a COA that would best support the plan of the maneuver unit. b. Identified where the risks must be accepted.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Identified the additional resources required. d. Identified the assets needed to minimize the risks. * 7. The element leader and staff finalize the construction plan and issue orders. **NOTE: The digital units send orders and coordinating instructions using the MCS or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).** a. Finalized the engineer task organization. b. Made final coordination with the maneuver element leader and staff on resources, security, and timelines. c. Issued orders, such as the scheme of engineer operation (SOEO), the subunit instructions, the engineer operation order (OPORD), the coordinating instructions, and the engineer annex. (1) Ensured that subunit instructions and/or orders included as a minimum the— (a) Start and end points. (b) General route location. (c) Lane requirements. (d) Traffic density. (e) Completion time. (f) Coordinating instructions for the attached and/or operational control (OPCON) units and handover instructions, if required. (2) Verified instructions to the follow-on units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0027	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment
05-2-0125	Provide Support for Mobility Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)
(FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tactically deployed in a contemporary operating environment. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Personnel and camouflage resources are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small arms range. The element location or identity cannot be determined through aerial or ground surveillance. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes. a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features. b. Ensured that the vehicle track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot. 2. Operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes. a. Used existing tracks. b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by the enemy ground or aerial fires. c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions. 3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment. **Note: The leader is provided intelligence data on enemy reconnaissance capabilities in the area of operations (AO).** a. Positioned vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows. b. Positioned vehicles and equipment so that their shapes blended with the surroundings. c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shapes or shadows of vehicles and equipment. d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area. e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color. f. Used nets to create shadows.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Used Camouflage Screen Systems to enhance natural materials. h. Kept heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) under screening systems, even when using natural concealment. i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies. j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted. k. Concealed vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain. l. Disguised vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy. * 4. Leaders enforce camouflage discipline. a. Ensured that the element activities did not change the area appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment. b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night. c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, defilade positions, or shields. d. Ensured the prompt and completed policing of debris or spoil from the area. * 5. Leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead. a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates. c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)
(FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-90.1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment the unit is conducting a convoy. The operation order (OPORD) and the rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-size force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations. **NOTE: Digital units set stale settings to provide current friendly and enemy unit locations.** a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank). b. Established radio communications with security elements. c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire). d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving. e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points. f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route. g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission. **NOTE: Digital units receive updated intelligence information through the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or the Maneuver Control System (MCS).** 2. The element prepares for combat operations. a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. **NOTE: Air guards are present.**		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition. c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP). d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs).		
3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at identified enemy positions. b. Sought available cover. c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover. d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy. e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the element leader.		
* 4. The element leader develops the situation. a. Initiated fire and maneuver. b. Requested indirect-fire support. c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition. d. Evaluated the direction and volume of the enemy fire, confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.		
* 5. The element leader selects a course of action based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank. b. Conducted a frontal assault. c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.		
6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).		
* 7. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ).		
8. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy. a. Reconstituted the security force. b. Treated and evacuated casualties. c. Reported casualties. d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment. e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113)
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. While moving mounted or dismounted, remotely delivered mines impact on or around the element. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units send and receive orders and reports and update the common operational picture (COP) using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). **NOTE: Digital units send alert messaging and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location and/or send reports using FM or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).** 2. Command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert units. a. Notified all elements. If the element was— (1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route. (2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires. (3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. (4) Unable to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared mines from positions through detonation and departed as soon as feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Informed higher headquarters (HQ) and adjacent units of the situation and included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed. c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered). 3. Vehicle commanders check the immediate area and element personnel remove any mines and trip wires from vehicles. Element personnel— a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires. b. Removed trip wires from soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device. **NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.** c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the rest of the unit was out of the minefield. * 4. Element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes. 5. Element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them. a. Used visual means to locate mines and marked the vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The lanes were marked according to the tactical situation and threat; however, marked areas also allowed personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles. b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes (using a grapnel hook or other means) as directed by the company commander. Detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage. * 6. Vehicle commanders direct the personnel that are ground-guiding vehicles out of the minefield. a. Ensured that individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command. b. Ensured that any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire was placed onto vehicles. c. Ensured that individual crews ground-guided vehicles to a designated lane or allowed them to exit the minefield on their own. 7. Company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield. a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes. b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove vehicles or equipment from the minefield. c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred. d. Placed sandbags near mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage. e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance. f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground. 8. If the position cannot be evacuated, element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow mission accomplishment. a. Cleared the communication lanes between positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Marked the communication lanes between positions. c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from the detonation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2150	Setup an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]), Preoperation
052-192-2151	Operate an M71 Remote Control Unit (for the Hornet)
052-192-2152	Emplace an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Remote Operations
052-192-3201	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Area Distribution
052-192-3202	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) in a Gauntlet
052-192-3203	Direct the Employment of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) with a Conventional Minefield
052-192-4201	Supervise the Placement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) Field
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Tactical Section

TASK: Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A)
(FM 7-8) (FM 3-90.1) (FM 5-10)
(FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. Security elements are coordinated. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions that provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The presence of the enemy is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. Digital units submit reports and locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA) to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. a. Conducted a mission analysis. (1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4. (2) If the unit was working alone or was in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance/minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2. b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance. **NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ).** c. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).		
* 2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The overwatch team leader— a. Selected a covered and concealed position. b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire. c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector and identify enemy forces.		
3. The reconnaissance/minesweeping team secures the site. a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site. b. Located, marked, and reported any mines or unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site. The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal.		
4. The element moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions. a. Identified avenues of approach. b. Identified observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter. c. Identified crew-served weapons positions. d. Established withdrawal routes. e. Identified dismounted personnel positions. f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions. g. Established sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles. h. Designated which fighting positions (OPs or patrols) would be manned full time. i. The patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team— (1) Provided early warning and close-in security. (2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants. (3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP. (4) Operated according to the unit TACSOP or SOP until relieved. (5) Maintained communications with the command post. j. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm. (1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit. (2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of the elements position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy. (3) Did not place the alarm in a depression. (4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted. k. Subordinate leaders designated individual positions. (1) Designated primary fighting positions. (2) Designated alternate fighting positions. (3) Established sectors of fire for each individual and ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit TACSOP or SOP. **NOTE: The unit TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completing the range cards and sector sketches.** l. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher HQ. m. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk management process. **NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on site with a 100 percent occupation of the position.** 6. The element begins work. a. Kept individual weapons within close reach. b. Maintained noise and light discipline. c. Maintained camouflage procedures. d. Maintained the directed MOPP level. e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher HQ. **NOTE: Digital units send reports and update the COP using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit TACSOP.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)
(FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard. a. Identified the UXO by type. b. Identified the UXO by subgroup. c. Observed all safety precautions.		
* 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. a. Evacuated the area as appropriate. b. Determined the appropriate action. (1) Avoided the UXO hazard. (2) Instituted protective measures.		
* 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. a. Chose leaders to mark the area. b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.		
* 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. a. Marked all the logical approach routes. b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers.		
* 5. The element reports the UXO hazard. a. Initiated the UXO spot report. b. Determined the priority based on the current situation. c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	**Task Title**
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-19.4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An opposing forces (OPFOR) squad-size patrol attempts reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element maintains 24-hour security in its assigned sector and is not surprised by the OPFOR.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares a physical security plan. a. Controlled the entry of vehicles into the CP. b. Developed procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions. c. Developed procedures for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP perimeter. d. Controlled access to the element defensive areas. e. Established communications links between observation posts (OPs) and the reaction force. f. Developed procedures for initial response to ground attacks. 2. The element operates a guard force. a. Established communications with the guard commander. b. Stopped unauthorized entry into restricted areas. c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter. 3. The element reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. a. Assumed preplanned positions. b. Denied intrusion into the CP perimeter.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)
(AR 385-10) (FM 3-0) (FM 7-0)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Leaders and soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards. a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks). b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process. c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed.		
* 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation. a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective. b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents. c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk. d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.		
* 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards. a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk. b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards. c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment. d. Briefed the elements before all operations.		
4. The element carries out safety procedures. a. Received safety briefings before all operations. b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals. c. Made on-spot safety corrections. **NOTES:**		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Safety is a part of realism, and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 7-0). **2. FM 3-0 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Manage Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)/Field Trains (05-1-0009)

(FM 100-10)	(FM 100-13)	(FM 100-16)
(FM 10-23-1)	(FM 10-27)	(FM 10-27-1)
(FM 10-27-4)	(FM 1-05)	(FM 10-52)
(FM 11-41)	(FM 11-50)	(FM 14-100)
(FM 4-02)	(FM 4-30.13)	(FM 4-30.3)
(FM 5-100)	(FM 55-1)	(FM 5-71-100)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 5-71-3)	(FM 63-1)
(FM 63-11)	(FM 63-2)	(FM 63-20)
(FM 63-21)	(FM 63-3)	(FM 8-10-6)
(FM 8-51)	(FM 8-55)	(FM 9-43-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer element is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The element conducts combat service support (CSS) operations using echelon trains. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The ALOC and/or field trains coordinate CSS requirements with the forward support battalion (FSB) and the maneuver brigade Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). The logistics packages (LOGPACs) are assembled with all of the required resupply items and dispatched forward as directed by the battalion S4. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) and S4 plan ALOC and/or field trains operations.		
* 2. The headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) commander positions the ALOC and/or field trains with the FSB and coordinates security.		
3. The ALOC and/or field trains coordinate for CSS. Coordinated with— a. The brigade. b. The FSB, to include pickup and delivery. c. The attached or supported units for support requirements. **NOTE: The digital units use the Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS) to send requests.**		
* 4. The HHC commander coordinates and assembles the LOGPACs.		
* 5. The HHC commander supervises the battalion personnel that are operating in the field trains.		
6. The ALOC and/or field trains control traffic forward to the combat trains.		
7. The ALOC and/or field trains maintain communications.		
8. The ALOC and/or field trains process incoming personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section

TASK: Coordinate for Medical Services (05-1-0050)
(FM 8-10-9) (FM 4-02.6) (FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is conducting operations in a contemporary operating environment and will require medical support. The battalion staff will conduct the necessary coordinations to ensure that the unit receives medical coverage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All leaders know where to receive medical support and know evacuation procedures. Subunits can identify the location of medical facilities and services. Medical support is available at all times. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader determines medical support requirements. Based requirements on— a. The battalion mission. b. Projected company missions. c. Requests from subordinate and supporting units.		
2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) requests medical support from the brigade S3 or the supported unit. a. Requested at least one physician assistant. b. Identified the number of medics needed. c. Provided the dates and time periods that medical personnel would be needed. d. Established the time and the location that medical personnel would link up with the unit. e. Identified special equipment that the medics needed to bring.		
3. The battalion S3 coordinates for pick up and assigns medics. a. Assigned medics to companies based on the mission. b. Established the support relationship. c. Coordinated the time and the linkup of medics with the unit they would support.		
* 4. The headquarters (HQ) company commander or first sergeant (1SG) plans for the treatment and evacuation of casualties. a. Established sick call procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Located medical facilities and medical supply points in the area of operations. c. Planned casualty treatment operations with the assistance of the medic. (1) Designated a casualty collection point.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Designated evacuation routes. (3) Planned for the security of the casualty collection point. (4) Ensured aid and litter teams were designated by all elements. d. Identified and disseminated evacuation procedures. Included— (1) Medical-evacuation (MEDEVAC) procedures. (2) Routes. (3) Vehicles to be used as ambulances. (4) The location of medical facilities. (5) The information in all operation orders (OPORD). 5. Battalion personnel and medics administer first aid to wounded personnel and evacuate casualties to the collection point. a. Caused no further injury during evacuation. b. Used poleless or improvised (poncho) litters. c. Employed the 1- or 2-man carry method. 6. The HQ company 1SG, designated noncommissioned officer (NCO), or medic directs casualty evacuation from the collection point to the medical facility. a. Determined the nearest medical facility to which the casualty would be evacuated. b. Contacted the medical facility where the casualty was being transported. (1) Ensured that the facility could accommodate the casualty. (2) Provided all available medical information regarding the casualty. (3) Requested advice regarding special measures taken before and during evacuation. c. Evacuated nonthreatening injuries by ground ambulance. d. Evacuated life-threatening injuries by helicopter using MEDEVAC procedures as outlined in the company SOP. e. Caused no further injuries during evacuation. f. Retained all classified materials (signal operation instructions [SOI], maps, orders, and overlays) and weapons in the casualty's custody. 7. The element leader notifies higher HQ of casualties. a. Provided the casualty's name, rank, and medical condition. b. Reported the facility to which the soldier was evacuated.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Unit Ministry Team
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical
Battalion Maintenance Section

TASK: Operate Combat Trains (05-1-0604)
(FM 3-0) (FM 3-21.91) (FM 3-90.2)
(FM 7-10) (FM 7-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer battalion is performing operations in support of a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The battalion is operating in echelon trains in situations that require resupply, maintenance, replacement, and evacuation activities. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The command post (CP) of the combat train supervises and coordinates the combat service support (CSS) for the battalion. It controls the movement, positioning, and security of the combat train elements to ensure continuous CSS and ensures that all requested supplies are received by the units according to the commander's guidance. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The CP of the combat train plans the CSS operations. **NOTE: The digital units conduct operations and send and receive requests using FM or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).**		
2. The battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) positions the combat trains.		
3. The combat train CP controls the combat train elements.		
4. The combat train staff coordinates the CSS operations. a. Collected the status from the battalion subordinate elements, to include the Administrative Logistical Operations Center (ALOC). b. Collected and provided information to the battalion commander and staff.		
5. The combat train maintains communications.		
6. The combat train Adjutant (US Army) (S1) personnel and administration center (PAC) section executes personnel functions.		
7. The combat train CP coordinates direct support (DS) maintenance requirements.		
8. The combat train CP controls movement and positioning.		
9. The combat train staff coordinates resupply, both routine and emergency, and submits requests for resupply and support.		
10. The combat train coordinates CSS with the field trains.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	**Task Title**
05-2-0127	Provide Support for Survivability Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration/Logistical
Administration and Logistical

TASK: Conduct Logistics Operations (05-1-4000)
(FM 10-27-4) (AR 220-15) (AR 710-2)
(DA PAM 710-2-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 10-23)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has deployed to a field location. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) section is operational and has all required plans, standing operating procedures (SOPs), forms, manuals, and equipment. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The S4 section provides logistical support for continuous operations without degrading the ability of the battalion to perform the mission due to inadequate logistics operations. The digital units send and receive orders or reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The S4 section maintains the daily staff journal or duty officer's log according to Army regulations. a. Opened and closed the journal daily according to the unit SOP. b. Made entries pertaining to significant events, information, messages, and documents. c. Reviewed the entries for correctness. 2. The S4 section serves as the primary staff section for logistical support, using Army Regulations (ARs), Department of the Army (DA) Pamphlets, and the section SOP as guidelines. **NOTE: The digital units conduct operations and send and receive requests using digital systems according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).** a. Provided detailed information on supply matters. b. Supervised and monitored the requisition, receipt, storage, and distribution of supplies and equipment (except Class VIII items). c. Supervised and monitored property accounting procedures. d. Planned and supervised the logistics execution and the service support portion of the plans and orders. e. Supervised and monitored the supply and maintenance records procedures. f. Prepared forecasts for Class III and Class V items and maintained data on their use. g. Coordinated with the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) section for the training of supply personnel. h. Maintained the battalion property book. i. Established the material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. j. Camouflaged areas according to the tactical situation. 3. The S4 section serves as the principal staff section for services, using field manuals as guidelines. a. Maintained and monitored food service operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Coordinated field feeding operations. c. Prepared the battalion feeding plan. d. Inspected field feeding operations to enforce sanitation regulations. 4. The S4 section serves as the principal staff section for other supply actions according to the following standards: a. Made arrangements for the receipt, storage, and issue of organizational clothing and individual equipment. b. Coordinated and monitored the unit laundry support services. c. Selected the general location for the service support areas. d. Coordinated and monitored the use of clothing exchange and bath points. e. Maintained data on the number of personnel requiring services and the dates and times services were offered. f. Designated the collection points for a salvage turn-in. g. Controlled the disposition of the salvage. h. Coordinated the transportation of deceased personnel. i. Ensured that all quartermaster items issued to the unit were on hand and serviceable. * 5. The battalion maintenance officer (BMO) serves as the principal staff officer for maintenance through the S4 section. a. Supervised the battalion maintenance program. b. Monitored maintenance operations and equipment status. c. Reviewed the unit status reports and material condition reports. d. Conducted spot-check inspections. e. Prepared the logistics portion of the unit status report. f. Reviewed and supervised the prescribed load list (PLL) for Class IX repair parts. g. Coordinated for the recovery and evacuation of unserviceable or nonrepairable battalion vehicles. h. Monitored the distribution and storage of repair parts and maintenance supplies. i. Established maintenance priorities and monitored the controlled exchange program. j. Estimated the maintenance impact of planned operations. k. Monitored the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) and the calibration program. 6. The S4 section, with the assistance of the BMO, conducts supply transactions. a. Coordinated, controlled, and supervised the turn-in of supplies and equipment. (1) Inspected the equipment for serviceability or repairs. (2) Ensured that all unit maintenance was performed. (3) Ensured that the required fluids were drained and equipment was cleaned consistent with the SOP of the supporting supply activity. (4) Ensured that all of the required forms were prepared reflecting equipment turn-in. b. Coordinated, controlled, and supervised the issues of supplies and equipment. (1) Inspected equipment. (2) Conducted a complete inventory. (3) Serviced and tested the equipment. (4) Prepared all of the required forms reflecting the issue and receipt of the supplies and equipment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
7. The S4 section serves as the principal staff section for transportation requirements. a. Provided a movement officer for the battalion. b. Developed and maintained the unit movement plan and SOP for all modes of transportation based on the operation plan (OPLAN). c. Ensured that movement plans included— (1) Vehicle preparation. (2) Load plans. (3) Personnel processing procedures. (4) Security procedures. (5) The duties and responsibilities of unit personnel. d. Updated the movement and load plans when changes to the modification table of organization and equipment (MTOE) were approved. e. Coordinated with the S3 section to determine the priorities for movement. f. Reviewed and coordinated the movement and load plans of subordinate units. g. Determined transportation requirements for the move and submitted requests for external transportation. h. Obtained road clearance for movement.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Battalion

TASK: Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP) (05-1-4001)
(FM 4-30.3) (FM 63-1) (FM 63-2)
(FM 63-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. During combat operational planning, UMCP locations have been identified. The commander's intent is to have a "fix forward" concept of maintenance support to maintain the momentum of the battle. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: A UMCP is established and operating. Maintenance support is provided as far forward as possible and according to the commander's intent, the unit maintenance standing operating procedure (SOP), and the tactical situation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The battalion maintenance officer or battalion maintenance technician receives the mission in an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) format. a. Reviewed the mission order. (1) Evaluated the tactical situation. (2) Determined time and distance factors. (3) Determined backup support availability and direct support (DS) maintenance augmentees. (4) Identified the command priorities. (5) Identified the critical equipment and weapons repair availability. (6) Identified the proposed locations of the UMCP. (7) Determined the maintenance time guidelines. (8) Evaluated cannibalization and controlled substitution policies. (9) Determined personnel availability and work load. (10) Evaluated the enemy situation and capabilities. (11) Determined security and fire support (FS) availability. (12) Determined petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) assets availability. (13) Determined recovery assets availability. (14) Identified the special tools needed and their availability. (15) Identified Class IX stockage availability. b. Task-organized maintenance, POL, and Class IX based on the mission requirements, commander’s intent and priorities, and assets available. Provided support at the following locations: (1) The company maintenance teams (CMTs). (a) Located with the company trains. (b) Placed under operational control (OPCON) of the supported unit. (c) Maintained quick-fix class IX and recovery support. (d) Provided quick-fix or rapid recovery forward on the battlefield. (e) Conducted an initial battle damage assessment (BDA) on the equipment. **NOTE: The CMTs are responsible for repairs taking less than 2 hours to accomplish.** (2) The UMCP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Established in or near the combat trains. (b) Controlled by the battalion maintenance officer (BMO) or the battalion maintenance technician (BMT). (c) Supported by the forward support battalion (FSB) maintenance support team (MST). (d) Returned the repaired critical equipment back to the unit. (e) Reported the status to higher HQ as required in the unit SOP. (f) Evacuated equipment that took more than 6 hours to repair to the proper maintenance location for repair. **NOTE: The UMCP is responsible for repairs and maintenance taking 2 to 6 hours.** (3) The field trains. (a) Located in the brigade support area (BSA). (b) Coordinated maintenance activities in or near the field trains. (c) Coordinated resupply functions to the UMCP and the CMTs. (d) Coordinated with the BSA maintenance collection point (MCP), which was responsible for repairs taking 6 to 24 hours to complete.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0027	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment (Company)
05-2-0125	Provide Support for Mobility Operations
05-2-0126	Provide Support for Countermobility Operations
05-2-0127	Provide Support for Survivability Operations
05-2-0600	Support a River Crossing Operation

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007)
(FM 12-6) (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156)
(DA FORM 2166-8) (DA FORM 2166-8-1) (DA FORM 67-9)
(FM 21-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is operating in a tactical environment with replacement personnel arriving. The company headquarters (HQ) has all assigned personnel; equipment; and required forms, manuals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company integrates the replacement personnel. The company prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, health, welfare, and morale of all assigned personnel. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company commander integrates replacement personnel and assigns them to subordinate elements within the company. a. Oriented replacement personnel before their assignment. (1) Identified the unit mission and the current situation. (2) Explained the chain-of-command procedures. (3) Explained the warning system, safety, and security procedures. b. Assigned replacement personnel on a priority basis.		
2. Company personnel prepare the personnel daily summary (PDS). a. Consolidated the subordinate element data. b. Prepared the PDS. c. Submitted the PDS to the battalion personnel and administration center (PAC).		
3. Company personnel process Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 and 1156. a. Posted and maintained the unit casualty record. b. Posted and maintained DA Form 1156.		
* 4. Company leaders in the chain of command review and verify the completed DA Forms 1155, and submit the reports to the battalion PAC.		
* 5. Company leaders initiate actions to request awards or promotions.		
* 6. Company leaders coordinate individual requests for administrative actions requiring approval from higher HQ. a. Adhered to the local battalion PAC policies. b. Relayed all duty statuses and other actions to the battalion PAC for processing. c. Coordinated all finance actions through the battalion PAC and the finance office.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Approved or disapproved personal administrative actions (pass, leave, and emergency leave). * 7. Company leaders initiate judicial and nonjudicial punishment actions. a. Drafted a summary of the incident or violation. b. Obtained and assembled investigation reports and witness statements. c. Reviewed the incident or violation to determine the best course of action (COA). d. Administered nonjudicial punishment. * 8. Company leaders monitor personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures. a. Ensured that the means were available for obtaining assistance (according to the SOP). b. Coordinated with higher HQ for morale and personnel support. * 9. The company commander initiates DA Form 67-9. *10. The platoon leader/sergeant initiates DA Forms 2166-8 and 2166-8-1. a. Drafted work sheets for the noncommissioned officer (NCO) checklist/record and the noncommissioned officer evaluation report (NCOER). b. Forwarded the draft work sheets to the battalion PAC. c. Maintained the appropriate privacy measures during all stages of the process. *11. Company leaders coordinate the medical and dental treatment of all assigned personnel (for nonbattle injuries). a. Ensured that the procedures for medical and dental assistance were coordinated with higher HQ. b. Adhered to the medical or dental evaluation of the medical or dental authority. *12. Company leaders coordinate for chaplain assistance. a. Coordinated the presentation of religious services. b. Advised personnel on how to obtain chaplain assistance. *13. Company leaders coordinate for Red Cross assistance. a. Advised personnel on how to obtain Red Cross assistance. b. Recommended personnel for Red Cross assistance.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)
(FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
(AR 40-5) (FM 4-25.12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Health hazards exist that require field sanitation measures. The element is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit field sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and the higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TACSOP, Field Manuals (FMs) 21-10 and 4-25.12, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures. a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter a medical threat. b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FMs 21-10 and 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures. d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit FST according to the TACSOP and the OPORD. e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies. f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST. g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TACSOP. h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.		
2. The FST supervises the unit field sanitation measures. a. Maintained the field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12. b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic-load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Tested the unit water supply for the required chlorine residual level according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. d. Inspected water containers and trailers according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures (skin, clothing, and bed net repellent) against arthropods and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance. f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required. g. Monitored personnel for the employment of correct hygiene measures. h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP, as required. i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP. k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander. n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP. o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.		
3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures. a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TACSOP. b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP. c. Consumed only water designated as potable. d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP. e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries. f. Employed personal-hygiene measures. g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed net repellent. h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST. i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP. j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Communication Section

TASK: Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)
(TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Designated personnel operate a telephone SB. a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components. b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements. c. Laid the SB on its side with nameplate up. d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12. e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12. f. Labeled the SB according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP). g. Connected local and trunk wire lines. 2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones. a. Tested the field wire or cable before installation. b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader. c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain. d. Used the proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. e. Tagged the wire ties. f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation. g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. 3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB. a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational. b. Processed calls. c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established. 5. Designated personnel perform PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Communication Section

TASK: Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)
(FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)
(TM 11-5805-294-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The internal communications network is set up according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan. a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain. b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance. c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines. d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task. e. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system. f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone system users. 2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB). a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available. b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from adverse elements. c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up. d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM. e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM. f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram. g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines. 3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones. a. Installed the distribution box. b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing. c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader. d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. f. Tagged the wire ties. g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment. h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. i. Finished the line route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction. 4. The section operates the telephone SB. a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational. b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties. c. Processed calls. d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required. e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM. 5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field cable or wire lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration and Logistical
Unit Ministry Team
Battalion Maintenance Section
Communication Section
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A)
(FM 12-6) (AR 600-8-1) (DA FORM 1594)
(TC 12-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers have been wounded, killed, captured, or are missing. Casualty reports are arriving from supported units. The element is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualty information is processed and provided daily to the supporting personnel service company (PSC) and parent brigade. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects casualty information. a. Logged casualty information on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1594. b. Completed missing information. c. Verified the data.		
2. The S1 section processes the casualty data. a. Posted the battle roster. b. Initiated the casualty feeder report. c. Printed the casualty feeder report. d. Backed up the feeder report file. e. Restored the feeder files. f. Merged the feeder reports for task force (TF) units. g. Prepared the transmittal letters. h. Prepared the letters of condolence and sympathy and forwarded them to the division Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1) or separate brigade S1.		
* 3. The personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO) forwards the casualty data. a. Reviewed casualty feeder reports for accuracy and completeness with the data entered on DA Form 1594. b. Reconciled the casualty log with the strength accounting data. c. Corrected any deficiencies. d. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the servicing PSC.		
* 4. The battalion S1 disseminates casualty information. a. Provided data to the battalion command group and staff. b. Coordinated religious rites with the chaplain.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
16-1-1001.05-T01A	Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Perform Strength Accounting (12-1-0404.05-T01A)
(FM 12-6) (FM 7-22.7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Personnel losses and gains have occurred. The daily personnel status report (PSR) is required. The element is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion strength data for supported elements recorded on the PSR are within plus or minus 5 percent of the actual present-for-duty strength of the company. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects strength information. a. Logged incoming situation reports (SITREPs) and messages from subordinate units. b. Spot-checked strength reports for missing information. c. Collected other personnel strength information from the tactical operations center (TOC) and the battalion aid station.		
2. The Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) updates the Command and Control Strength Reporting System (C2SRS). a. Updated the battle roster. b. Entered individual changes. c. Posted the commander's narrative guidance. d. Printed the personnel status (PS) and personnel requirements report (PRR). e. Forwarded the PS and PRR to the personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO). f. Created a TACCS floppy diskette of the PS and PRR. g. Printed an updated battle roster as required and provided it to the companies.		
* 3. The PSNCO reviews the C2SRS. a. Reviewed the PS and PRR for completeness and accuracy. b. Cross-checked the primary military occupational specialty (PMOS) or duty military occupational specialty (DMOS) report against the PRR. c. Forwarded the reports to the PAC supervisor.		
* 4. The PAC supervisor forwards strength information. a. Provided data to the supporting personnel service company (PSC). b. Provided data to the brigade S1. c. Provided data to the S1 section of attached units.		
* 5. The S1 disseminates strength data. a. Briefed the command group and staff daily. b. Supported the staff decision planning process with personnel strength information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Conduct Replacement Operations (12-1-0405.05-T01A)
(FM 12-6) (DA FORM 3955) (DA FORM 647)
(DA PAM 600-8-2) (DA PAM 600-8-23)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Replacements arrive in the battalion area. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The unit is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) processes and transports replacements to their units within 4 hours of their arrival. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) conducts administrative processing. a. Reviewed assignment orders. b. Welcomed soldiers to the unit. c. Assigned soldiers to units according to the commander's priorities. d. Signed soldiers in on Department of the Army (DA) Form 647. e. Collected medical and dental records. f. Turned in medical and dental records to the battalion aid station. g. Added names to the battle roster. h. Prepared Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) input. i. Completed DA Form 3955. j. Forwarded DA Form 3955 to the servicing postal activity.		
* 2. The S1 or PAC supervisor processes soldiers into the command. a. Briefed the mission and the tactical situation. b. Coordinated mess and medical support. c. Inspected soldiers for combat-critical clothing shortages. d. Coordinated equipment issue. e. Coordinated transportation to subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Process Personnel and Administrative Actions (12-1-0406.05-T01A)
(AR 25-50) (AR 27-10) (DA FORM 31)
(DA FORM 638) (FM 12-6) (FM 7-22.7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is performing its combat mission. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Requests for personnel actions are being received. Distribution, Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ) actions, and hometown news releases are being received. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel actions are processed as soon as possible in keeping with the tactical situation in a manner that precludes adverse morale implications. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The personnel and administration center (PAC) collects requests from supported companies and higher headquarters (HQ). a. Logged receipt of all actions. b. Verified actions to ensure their validity and need. c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.		
2. The PAC processes information. a. Prioritized all personnel actions. b. Prepared appropriate personnel forms. c. Reviewed actions for accuracy and completeness. d. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data. e. Advised soldiers.		
* 3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) or PAC supervisor processes actions. a. Performed technical and administrative reviews. b. Corrected minor errors. c. Approved or recommended approval. d. Dispatched actions to higher HQ for further processing.		
* 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor disseminates information. a. Briefed the commander on the status of personnel actions. b. Informed subordinate companies and soldiers on the status of personnel actions.		
5. The PAC processes award recommendations. a. Reviewed recommendations for awards. b. Processed Department of the Army (DA) Forms 638. c. Forwarded the recommendations to the approving authority. d. Suspensed a copy of the recommendation for award. e. Forwarded approved awards to the unit commander for presentation at an appropriate ceremony (when the situation permitted).		
6. The PAC processes leave requests. a. Processed DA Forms 31.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Maintained a leave control log. c. Forwarded required copies of DA Form 31 to the Finance Support Command (FSC), as appropriate. 7. The PAC processes standard installation/division personnel system (SIDPERS) input. a. Prepared input. b. Reviewed transactions for accuracy and completeness. c. Obtained required signatures for transmittal. 8. The PAC manages the evaluation reporting system. a. Initiated evaluation report shells. b. Established an internal suspense for each evaluation report. c. Forwarded evaluation work sheets to the appropriate subordinate units. d. Reviewed returned evaluation reports for completeness and accuracy. e. Prepared evaluation reports, if required. f. Returned completed evaluation reports for the required signatures. g. Checked returned evaluation reports to ensure that signatures and dates were correct. h. Forwarded completed evaluation reports to the personnel service company (PSC). 9. The PAC provides administrative support. a. Maintained a suspense control. b. Typed all standing operating procedures (SOPs) and correspondence for the battalion commander, the executive officer (XO), and the units (including memorandums, letters, endorsements, accident reports, and forms). c. Operated reproduction equipment. d. Maintained reproduction equipment. e. Picked up distribution from higher HQ. f. Sorted distribution. g. Secured distribution. h. Processed distribution from staff sections and subordinate and attached units. i. Maintained required blank forms and publications. 10. The PAC processes promotion recommendations. a. Verified soldier eligibility. b. Forwarded a list of names of eligible soldiers to the subordinate units. c. Forwarded promotion recommendations to the appropriate promotion authority. d. Verified proper distribution of promotion orders (individual, personnel, and finance). e. Initiated further command actions when required. 11. The PAC processes letters of reprimand. a. Determined the facts that support the imposition of the letter of reprimand. b. Prepared the letter of reprimand for the commander's signature. c. Prepared the notification letter to the individual advising him of his rights. 12. The PAC processes letters of indebtedness. a. Gathered all documents and facts bearing on the claimed indebtedness of the soldier. b. Prepared the letter for the commander's signature to the agency or individual claiming the debt.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Dispatched the letter to the agency or individual. d. Followed up, if necessary. e. Referred the soldier to the division Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor for legal assistance and preparation of response to debtors. 13. The PAC processes letters of nonsupport. a. Determined the type of letter to be prepared based on all facts gathered. b. Determined all information bearing on the claimed nonsupport by the soldier. c. Prepared the letter for the commander's or soldier's signature. d. Dispatched the letter to the agency or individual claiming nonsupport. 14. The PAC processes other adverse actions. a. Ensured that all facts and supporting documents were available. b. Prepared the required administrative documents. c. Forwarded the packet to the appropriate authority for action. 15. The PAC provides financial assistance. a. Processed related documents. b. Distributed net pay advice (NPA) and leave and earnings statements (LESs). c. Resolved less-complicated pay problems. d. Answered pay-related inquires. e. Provided liaison and coordination with the supporting FSC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A)

(AR 27-10)	(AR 15-6)	(AR 190-47)
(AR 27-1)	(AR 27-20)	(AR 600-20)
(AR 600-8-2)	(AR 600-85)	(AR 635-200)
(DD FORM 457)	(DOD REG 5500.7-R)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is deployed and conducting combat operations. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Requests for legal support have been received. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) provides legal support to the command according to the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ), other laws and directives, the Manual for Courts-Martial (MCM), and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The battalion legal noncommissioned officer (NCO) or specialist provides the battalion commander with the current status of legal matters, to include— a. Courts-martial actions and dispositions. b. Nonjudicial proceedings. c. Administrative separation actions. d. Formal and informal investigations. e. Other adverse administrative actions, such as bars to reenlistment or letters of reprimand.		
2. The battalion legal NCO or specialist assists subordinate commanders and soldiers. a. Coordinated with subordinate units to assist in the disposition of court and board actions. b. Prepared charge sheets, allied papers, confinement orders, and the commander's actions. c. Recorded and prepared proceedings of Article 32(b) investigations (Department of Defense [DD] Form 457). d. Prepared records of nonjudicial punishment. e. Reviewed records of nonjudicial punishment forwarded by subordinate units. f. Processed appeals of nonjudicial punishment and monitored posting of records to personnel and financial files. g. Prepared notifications of administrative separation. h. Recorded and prepared records of board proceedings related to administrative separations. i. Prepared, processed, and monitored the administrative separation actions. j. Recorded and prepared records of trial for special courts-martial. k. Prepared and processed records of trial for summary courts-martial. l. Prepared, processed, and monitored the suspension of favorable personnel actions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the brigade legal NCO for legal services from the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor. a. Acted as a liaison between subordinate units and the SJA section. b. Assisted the legal assistance officer in preparing powers of attorney, wills, and other legal assistance documents. c. Assisted the claims judge advocate with claims investigations and assisted in the preparation of claims forms, to include forwarding them for appropriate disposition. d. Forwarded documents for review by administrative law and contract law personnel. e. Assisted judge advocates with military justice, international law, and operational law training. f. Assisted the trial counsel in preparing pretrial, trial, and posttrial documents. g. Arranged for witnesses and other necessary personnel to be present at the courts-martial. h. Assisted in processing of posttrial prisoners for confinement.		
4. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the trial defense service for defense counsel services. a. Arranged for advice by counsel for nonjudicial punishment proceedings. b. Arranged for consultation with counsel for administrative separations or representation.		
* 5. The battalion commander administers the UCMJ. a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of violations of the UCMJ. b. Administered nonjudicial punishment. c. Returned charges to the subordinate commander for other disposition. d. Referred charges to trial by summary court or forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial.		
* 6. The battalion commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other than judicial or nonjudicial proceedings. a. Initiated, forwarded, approved, or returned letters of reprimand/admonition. b. Approved, disapproved, or forwarded administrative separations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program (16-1-1001.05-T01A)
(FM 1-05)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is engaged in combat operations. Casualties have occurred. Requests for religious support have been received. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The command and soldier religious-support needs are promptly met. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit ministry team (UMT) prepares the religious-support plan. a. Obtained the battalion commander's guidance. b. Assessed the religious needs of the command. c. Coordinated for direct religious support (DRS) and general religious support (GRS). d. Provided the coordinating staff with the required input to the plans and the orders. e. Provided the UMT with the input to the religious-support annex of higher-echelon operations and plans. f. Prepared and disseminated the battalion religious-support plan. g. Reviewed the casualty data.		
2. The UMT performs or provides religious support, rites, and services. a. Provided worship services; memorial ceremonies to honor the dead; and services for the sacraments, rites, and ordinances. b. Ensured that mass or emergency burials were conducted with reverential handling of the remains, appropriate religious burials, and the proper military honors. c. Provided DRS to battalion headquarters personnel.		
3. The UMT performs pastoral care to the soldiers. a. Provided pastoral care to counter battlefield shock and trauma. b. Conducted pastoral counseling to lessen stress and enhance morale. c. Provided immediate support for battle fatigue. d. Conducted specialized counseling to lessen stress and enhance morale and performance. e. Provided care and counseling functions. f. Conducted pastoral care to casualties during intense battles.		
4. The UMT advises the commander on unit morale, moral climate, and religious welfare. a. Provided direct, personally verified information on the morale and moral climate of the command. b. Briefed the commander on the moral and humanitarian aspects of policies and leadership. c. Informed the commander, personally, on the impact of unit policies; unjust, disruptive, and potentially disruptive social patterns; and any possible violations of the laws of war.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Advised the commander on specific religious requirements of the soldiers and the policies or procedures affecting their right to free exercise of religion. 5. The UMT advises the commander on ethical issues. a. Advised the commander on methods of improving the ethical climate within the unit. b. Briefed on the ethical aspects of policies and leadership. c. Briefed the commander on the training of soldiers in ethical and moral decision making. d. Used preaching, pastoral counseling, and ethical or moral instruction, to reaffirm the value of human life, justice, dignity, and truth and to challenge soldiers to serve their country honorably. e. Served as the ethical advocate to the commander in preventing the mistreatment of friendly troops, enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), and civilians; the violation of morality codes; the desecration of sacred places; the disrespect for human life; and illegal acts. 6. The UMT advises the commander on indigenous religions. a. Assisted the civil-military operations officer in analyzing religious and cultural factors in basic doctrines, religious structures, and symbols and practices of the principal faith and the significance of sacred shrines, temples, and holy places. b. Advised the command of the indigenous religions of the local population and their impact on the unit mission. c. Assisted the command in developing friendly relations with local religious groups and civilians. d. Met the human-welfare needs produced by combat.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element searches the EPWs. a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value. b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment. c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken.		
2. The element segregates the EPWs. a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology. b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.		
3. The element silences the EPWs. a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders. b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape. c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.		
4. The element safeguards the EPWs. a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs. c. Treated the EPWs humanely.		
5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745. a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture. b. Attached Part A to the EPWs. c. Retained Part B for the unit records. d. Attached Part C to the property.		
6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited the intelligence information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion Maintenance Section
Unit Ministry Team
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)
(FM 4-30.3) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)
(AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA PAM 738-750)
(FM 9-43-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative organic equipment. The element maintenance area is established. The required tools, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Element maintenance is a continuous task and is performed simultaneously with other internal support and operational tasks. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element vehicles and equipment are maintained according to the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the commander's guidance. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander directs the element maintenance program. a. Supervised the implementation of the unit maintenance program to ensure compliance with the commander's guidance and the TACSOP. b. Identified the company operational levels by reviewing the vehicle and equipment status reports. c. Approved the use of controlled exchanges when the required repair parts were not available. d. Approved repairs using the battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures when the established repair procedures could not be used. e. Checked the materiel condition status report (MCSR) for accuracy and completeness. f. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems to minimize their impact on element readiness. g. Coordinated the resolution of maintenance problems with the battalion maintenance officer (BMO). h. Forwarded the MCSR to the BMO. i. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced.		
* 2. Section leaders supervise operator maintenance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Monitored PMCS performance for compliance with the appropriate TMs and the commander's guidance. b. Inspected personnel and equipment to ensure compliance with the safety program. c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the motor sergeant. d. Monitored the supply of the repair parts for platoon equipment to ensure that the repair parts were on order. e. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant. f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment. g. Provided input for the MCSR to the commander.		
3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance. a. Performed PMCS according to the appropriate TMs. b. Notified the supervisor of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability. c. Requested approval for the BDAR through the platoon leader when the established repair procedures could not be used. d. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual. e. Assisted the unit maintenance personnel with the repairs and services.		
* 4. The motor sergeant supervises the unit maintenance personnel. a. Organized the element maintenance personnel to perform element maintenance activities. b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and the prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy. c. Supervised the repair and the inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to the appropriate references. d. Requested approval for the BDAR from the commander when the established repair procedures could not be used. e. Supervised the BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals. f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges from the commander when the required repair parts were not available. g. Supervised the use of controlled exchanges for compliance with the commander's guidance. h. Notified the platoon or section leaders upon completion of the repairs. i. Supervised the recovery operations to ensure that the correct recovery and safety procedures were used. j. Supervised the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals. k. Coordinated the maintenance status with the platoon leader. l. Provided the unit maintenance status to the commander.		
5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment. a. Diagnosed faults on the inoperative equipment. b. Requested the required repair parts from the PLL clerk. c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable TMs. d. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant when the established repair parts were not available. e. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual. f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges through the motor sergeant when the required repair parts were not available. g. Performed controlled exchanges. h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs. i. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance. a. Identified the category of the repair as direct support or higher. b. Corrected unit level deficiencies. c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance. d. Evacuated the equipment to support maintenance. e. Verified the completion of repairs. f. Picked up the equipment upon the completion of repairs. 7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative-support functions. a. Maintained the PLL. b. Requested repair parts for element equipment. c. Turned in unserviceable, repairable items. d. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment. 8. Unit maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles. a. Verified the location of the disabled vehicle. b. Identified the best route to the vehicle, given the tactical situation. c. Coordinated indirect-fire support along the route with the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Maintained security while en route to the recovery site. e. Established local security at the recovery site. f. Removed casualties from vehicles. g. Treated casualties. h. Requested medical assistance, if required. i. Evacuated casualties, if required. j. Performed a battle damage assessment to determine if repairs were required. k. Performed repairs and the BDAR on site, if possible. l. Recovered nonrepairable equipment back to the unit maintenance area according to the established recovery procedures. m. Requested the disposition of unrecoverable equipment from the commander. n. Conducted salvage operations to remove all usable equipment. o. Prepared vehicles for destruction according to the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion) (05-1-0001)
(FM 90-7) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is supporting a maneuver unit in a contemporary operating environment. An engineer estimate and an initial engineer plan have been developed to support the operation. The engineer battalion staff, the assistant brigade engineer (ABE) section, or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) section is tasked to prepare an obstacle plan using the estimate and guidance from the supported unit commander. Higher headquarters (HQ) provided guidance and identified responsibilities; reserve and situational obstacles; obstacle belts and zones; obstacle restrictions; scatterable mine (SCATMINE) employment authority; and concept, priorities, and special instructions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The obstacle plan supports the task force (TF) commander's scheme of maneuver. The plan outlines how and where tactical obstacles are emplaced to turn, disrupt, fix, or block enemy forces and multiply the effects and capabilities of firepower. The time required to perform this task in increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The battalion staff obtains available information. a. Determined the facts and developed assumptions. b. Analyzed the higher HQ mission and commander's intent. c. Analyzed the relative combat power. d. Issued the commander's guidance.		
2. After the staff develops a course of action (COA), the detailed obstacle planning begins. The staff focused on the following three specifics when developing the obstacle plan to support the COA: a. Fires analysis. b. Obstacle intent integration. The staff decided which specific effect each directed obstacle group must achieve. It planned obstacle groups to— (1) Disrupt the enemy. (2) Turn the enemy into areas where friendly units can mass fires. (3) Fix the enemy in the engagement area (EA) and enhance fires. (4) Block the enemy along an avenue of approach (AA). c. Obstacle priorities.		
* 3. The staff conducts war gaming to determine which COA it should recommend to the commander. The staff should consider obstacles within the total context of the COA. The staff specifically considered— a. Enemy reactions at obstacle groups versus the desired obstacle effect. b. The enemy breaching capability that may make one or more varieties of individual obstacles preferable. c. Obstacle locations that inhibit friendly maneuver.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Compatible obstacle effects and weapon system capabilities. e. Adequate fire control measures to support the obstacle effect. 4. After war gaming, the staff adjusts the COA to include the obstacle plan. These adjustments may have included the following: a. Changes to locations of directed obstacle groups. b. Changes to the obstacle effect at a specific location. c. Addition of situational obstacle groups. d. Addition of reserve obstacle groups. e. Identification of other mobility requirements. * 5. The staff identifies mobility requirements. Determined— a. Which obstacles needed lanes or bypasses available for friendly forces. b. Locations for lanes and bypasses based on tactical repositioning from the maneuver graphics, such as a route, axis, or subsequent position. c. Command and Control (C2) mobility requirements, including plans for rehearsals and physical placement of target reference points (TRPs). d. Lanes and bypasses that were needed to support sustainment traffic. **NOTE: Consider the main supply routes (MSRs) into and through the TF area, the TF logistics release point (LRP), the routes the company team takes from its position to the LRP, and the location of key TF logistics nodes.** 6. The staff conducts detailed planning for the obstacle plan that supports the recommended COA, after comparing the COAs and determining which COA to recommend to the commander. a. Determined the tentative design and resourcing for the obstacle plan. Completed the final design and resourcing after the commander approved the COA and any final changes. **NOTE: Final design normally occurs at the company team and emplacing unit level. The staff can develop a detailed concept that will require only minor modifications to support the final approved plan.** b. Used the plan for the individual obstacles, which made up a group, as a guide for the TF staff to adjust the resource allocation. **NOTE: If time is available for detailed reconnaissance, the design of the group may provide the company teams with the actual obstacle design for each group. The design of the obstacle groups usually serves as a guide to company teams, and they conduct the actual design of individual obstacles with the emplacing unit leader.** 7. The staff completes the plan and publishes the order once the commander selects a COA. 8. The staff makes final adjustments to the plan and provides subordinate units with oral, written, and graphical information, with enough detail to allow the subordinate unit to conduct the operation. 9. The TF gives information concerning obstacles to subordinates using the scheme-of-obstacles overlay and the obstacle-execution matrix. a. Used the scheme-of-obstacles overlay to depict the location of obstacle belts, brigade obstacle groups, and TF groups, within the TF sector. (1) Included obstacle restrictions from any higher level (the staff annotates restrictions that it cannot show graphically). (2) Portrayed obstacle groups using an obstacle-effect graphic.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Obstacle graphics define the general location and the effect to be achieved by individual obstacles. The obstacle overlay does not normally depict individual obstacle locations. Alternately, the staff may include individual proposed obstacle graphics with the obstacle-effect graphic to guide the emplacing unit and the owning unit on the general configuration of the obstacle group. Commanders must exercise caution if they use individual proposed obstacles on an overlay. They must ensure that inexperienced subordinates properly site the obstacle instead of attempting to emplace it exactly as depicted on an overlay. b. Used the obstacle-execution matrix, which included specific instructions and detailed information concerning the obstacles on the scheme-of-obstacles overlay. Normally, there is a separate execution matrix for each type of tactical obstacle. As a minimum, a directed obstacle execution matrix should include the following: (1) The zone, belt, or group designation and individual obstacle numbers. (2) The location (grid coordinates appropriate to the detail of the plan). **NOTE: This may be a center of mass grid for the obstacle, start and end points of the group trace, or grid coordinates for individual obstacles, if known.** (3) The obstacle effect for the group. (4) The priority for the group. (5) Emplacing and owning unit. (6) The location of any lanes and closure instructions or reference to a reserve-obstacle matrix, if appropriate. (7) Material or assets allocated for the group (possibly listed by number of standard obstacles). (8) The location of the obstacle materials (the Class IV and Class V point or other site). (9) Any special instructions for each group.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion) (05-1-0002)
(FM 90-7) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-102)
(FM 5-103) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer element is supporting an engineer brigade, group, or maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The battalion or element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO), an operation order (OPORD), or a supplementary order from higher headquarters (HQ). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The estimate provides the commander with courses of action (COA) consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander receives a warning order (WO), a FRAGO, or an OPORD and performs a mission analysis. a. Analyzed the higher HQ mission and the commander's intent. b. Determined the facts and developed assumptions. c. Analyzed the relative combat power. d. Issued the commander's guidance. e. Identified the specified and implied tasks based on the commander's guidance and nature of the operations. f. Restated the unit mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why. **NOTE: The commander or element leader focuses on several essential components of the basic order, enemy situation, mission paragraph, task organization, logistics, engineer annex, type of operation (offensive or defensive), current intelligence picture, and time available.**		
* 2. The commander or element leader conducts the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and engineer battlefield assessment (EBA), aided by the staff or operations section. a. Analyzed the situation template (SITEMP). b. Developed or requested a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). c. Prepared an assembly area (AA) overlay with maneuver controls (MCs), friendly operational graphic, key terrain, and potential enemy objectives.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Terrain analysis is a major component of the IPB process using the obstacles, avenues of approach, key terrain, observation and fields of fire, and cover and concealment (OCOKA) framework. This assists in determining advantages or disadvantages terrain and weather offer the friendly and enemy forces. 3. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) section develops a SITEMP. The SITEMP— a. Determined how the enemy would attack in terms of the size and the type of units and formations. b. Depicted likely routes for enemy reconnaissance elements. 4. The staff or operations section provides information on current and projected engineer task organization and the capabilities of engineer units supporting the task force (TF). a. Provided facts concerning scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems. b. Ensured that— (1) The fire support officer (FSO) provided information on available artillery or aircraft-delivered SCATMINEs. (2) The supply section identified the quantity and location of obstacle material on hand, the transportation assets available for moving obstacle material, and the maintenance status of equipment that could contribute to the obstacle effort. 5. The staff or operations section analyzes the relative combat power and compared friendly and enemy combat power. a. Identified the tasks and limitations received from the brigade, including obstacle belts with or without a specified effect. b. Included restricted areas or restrictions on types of obstacle groups (situational, reserve, or directed). 6. The TF identifies engineer units, SCATMINE systems (artillery, air, or ground), infantry units that can provide more manpower for obstacle emplacement, and trucks and utility aircraft for moving obstacle materials. * 7. The element leader issues planning guidance on obstacles which is as specific as possible. **NOTE: If the element leader narrows the number of COAs, or if some aspect of the different COAs remains unchanged, they may provide specific guidance on obstacles in certain areas.** 8. The staff or operations section develops a COA and detailed obstacle planning begins. Focuses on the obstacle intent, integration of fires, and obstacle priorities. 9. The staff or operations section conducts a fires analysis after reviewing the TF commander's intent on how to integrate obstacles with the COA of the maneuver unit to achieve the commander's intent. 10. The staff or operations section develops maneuver graphics. a. Indicated how and where combat forces will mass, shift, and lift fires to destroy the enemy in maneuver and fire-control measures. b. Used range fans for friendly weapon systems. c. Combined fire-control measures locations for company teams to integrate obstacles with fires.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*11. The TF commander provides the obstacle intent integration, and the staff or operations section decides which specific effect each directed obstacle group must achieve. **NOTE: The obstacle integration should turn, disrupt, fix or block the enemy.** 12. The staff or operations section integrates the directed obstacle groups (location, target, and specific effect [intent]) with the COA. a. Showed the obstacle groups on the COA overlay using the obstacle effect graphics. b. Developed graphics to reflect the location of the obstacle group as accurately as possible. 13. The staff or operations section sets priorities for the directed obstacle groups on the COA overlay. a. Aligned the obstacle group priorities to support the main effort of the TF. b. Numbered the obstacle effects graphics on the overlay starting with 1 and continuing in sequence. 14. The staff or operations section conducts COA analysis and considers obstacles within the total context of the COA. a. Ensured that the scheme of engineer operations supports the maneuver plan and is integrated with the other staff or operations section elements. b. Evaluated enemy breaching capabilities that may make one or more varieties of individual obstacles preferable. c. Identified weaknesses in the plan and made adjustments, if necessary. d. Ensured that weapons systems capabilities were compatible with the desired obstacle effects. e. Developed adequate fire-control measures to support the obstacle effect. *15. The staff or operations section engineer compares COAs in terms of which scheme of engineer operations best supports mission accomplishment. a. Changed the locations of directed obstacle groups. b. Changed the desired obstacle effect at a specific location. c. Added situational obstacles, and reserve obstacle groups. d. Identified other mobility requirements. 16. The staff or operations section identifies mobility requirements to determine which obstacles need lanes or bypasses to be available for friendly forces. a. Identified lanes and bypasses required for tactical repositioning, command and control (C2), and sustainment traffic. b. Identified C2 mobility requirements, to include plans for rehearsals and physical placement of target reference points (TRPs). **NOTE: Other considerations are the main supply routes (MSRs) into and through the TF area, the TF logistics release point (LRP), the routes the company team takes from its position to the LRP, and the location of key TF logistics nodes.** 17. The staff or operations section develops obstacle plans and resource requirements. a. Resourced the final design after the commander approved the COA and any final changes. b. Resourced the obstacle groups according to the obstacle group priorities. c. Planned the individual obstacles. d. Designed the obstacle groups to serve as a guide to company teams.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: After comparing the COAs and determining the COA for recommendation to the commander, the staff or operations section can conduct more detailed planning for the obstacle plan that supports that COA. The staff or operations section begins by resourcing the groups based on the MC widths and the desired effect. It determines MC widths from the SITEMP.		
18. The staff or operations section develops a scheme-of-obstacles overlay. Depicts the location of obstacle belts, brigade obstacle groups (if any), and TF obstacle groups, within the TF sector. **NOTE: Coordination is perhaps the most vital component of effective obstacle integration. This coordination must occur between the emplacing unit leader (normally an engineer platoon leader) and the company team commander. It is at this level that units directly integrate obstacles with the effects and capabilities of weapons and the fire plan. Once the coordination is complete, the emplacing unit physically sites the obstacle with the company team. Effective coordination with the company team commander who is responsible for the obstacle group is essential to making the obstacles a combat multiplier. The engineer and the maneuver team commander work closely to ensure the complete integration of obstacles with the company team plan.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0415	Analyze Battlefield Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Battalion
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion) (05-1-0003)
(FM 5-100) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The staff engineer must prepare an engineer annex as part of the maneuver element operation order (OPORD). The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The annex contains the essential information needed to support the maneuver commander's operation. The engineer annex is clear, complete, brief, and timely. It avoids qualified directives and its concept is understood by the maneuver force. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and staff develop an engineer annex that is clear, complete, brief, and timely. a. Ensured that the annex avoided qualified directives. b. Derived critical information from the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA) process. c. Covered all critical information and tasks not in the order. d. Covered items not in the standing operating procedures (SOPs). e. Directed information and tasks to major subordinate elements of the supported unit, excluding supporting engineer units. **NOTE: The actual content of the annex depends on the type of operation and engineer plan. The engineer annex includes any combination of written instructions, matrices, or overlays needed to convey the necessary details of the engineer plan. A standardized annex format makes it easier for the engineer staff officer to remember what is included and for subordinate staff officers to find required information.** f. Coordinated information and instructions with other parts of the OPORD, the supported-unit commander, and staff. 2. The staff or operations section ensures that the engineer annex includes matrices and overlays, as necessary, to convey the plan. a. Identified all existing and proposed friendly obstacles and control measures (obstacles, restrictions, and lanes; directed or tactical reserve obstacles; and situational obstacles, including associated named areas of interest [NAIs] and targeted areas of interest [TAIs]). b. Depicted all known and plotted enemy obstacles (must also be on the situation template).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Depicted NBC contaminated areas, scatterable mine (SCATMINE) restrictions, river crossing locations, and logistic locations and routes, as they apply to engineer operations. 3. The staff develops the engineer annex according to Field Manual 5-100.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Tactical Section
Operations and Plans
Command Section
Battalion

TASK: Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process (05-1-0006)
(FM 5-71-3) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-7-30)
(FM 90-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The element must conduct necessary coordinations to integrate itself into the maneuver task force FS plan. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and the systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The engineer battalion must be integrated in the FS plan to ensure survivability of engineer assets. The FS plan must support engineer forces during offensive and defensive operations. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The brigade engineer, along with the maneuver Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), and the fire support officer (FSO), develops the offensive operations FS plan for the maneuver brigade, ensuring that engineer forces have FS coverage. a. Templated enemy obstacles and obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL). b. Conducted a target-value analysis (TVA) and recommended a high-value target (HVT). c. War-gamed the operation with the maneuver brigade to determine the critical tasks and time phase lines of fires. d. Planned the synchronization of suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and attack (SOSRA) obstacle breaching fundamentals and integration with assault and support elements. e. Planned the smoke and indirect fires on key locations during the operation. f. Monitored the precombat inspections (PCIs) and supervised the rehearsals to ensure synchronization. g. War-gamed with the FSO to determine artillery effects, the critical friendly zone (CFZ) at the point of penetration (POP), and the number of volleys required to produce the desired effect. h. Identified observer locations for the scatterable mine (SCATMINE) targets. i. Verified the target list and the positioning and timing of artillery support. j. Monitored the battle and reported the status of significant engineer events as they occurred, such as SCATMINE employment and detection, positioning of supplies, and battlefield loss and replacements, to the maneuver brigade and the engineer staff .		
* 2. The brigade engineer and staff coordinate and plan direct and indirect fire in the maneuver brigade defensive operations FS plan. a. Linked the FS planning with the obstacle effort.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. War-gamed with the brigade S3 and FSO to identify fire-control measures, confirming trigger lines, target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas (EAs), engagement criteria or fire distribution, contact points, obstacle integration, and situational-obstacle execution. c. War-gamed and templated SCATMINEs and wide area munition employment. d. Participated in the TVA and recommended HVTs. e. Determined the CFZs for engineer operations. f. Tracked the battlefield and reported the status of significant engineer events, as they occurred, to the maneuver and engineer staffs . 3. The brigade engineer distributes the FS plan to subordinate units. **NOTE: The digital units use digital systems and tools to plan, coordinate, send, and receive messages according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-0126	Provide Support for Countermobility Operations
05-2-0127	Provide Support for Survivability Operations
05-2-0514	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Administration and Logistical
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (05-1-0008)
(FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. It receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPORD. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The element is linked to the task force (TF) tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The OPORD follows the commander's intent and contains all information necessary to accomplish the mission. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander writes an OPORD following the five-paragraph format. **NOTE: Digital elements can write the OPORD and perform planning functions using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS).** a. Ensured that the heading contained the task organization. (1) Included all engineer headquarters (HQ) of the elements under the brigade control. (2) Included all engineer HQ of organic elements if the OPORD was the initial order for the operation. (3) Listed companies and special platoons that were task-organized to HQ other than their parent element. (4) Listed special equipment if it was not clear in the unit task organization. (5) Streamlined command and control (C2). (6) Addressed command support relationships. b. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about enemy forces (terrain, weather, and enemy situation), friendly forces (higher and adjacent), attachments, and detachments. c. Ensured that the mission was clearly stated, to include who (battalion organization), what, when, where, and why (includes higher mission). d. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the battalion commander's intent with linkage to higher intent, subordinate element tasks and instructions, and coordinating instructions. e. Ensured that the service support paragraph contained combat service support (CSS) instructions and arrangements for supporting units. Used an annex, if lengthy. Otherwise, used the following paragraph 4 sample format:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
----------		
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. a. General concept of logistics support. b. Material and services. (1) Supply. (2) Transportation. (3) Services. c. Medical evacuation and hospitalization. d. Personnel. e. Civil-military cooperation. f. Miscellaneous.		
---------- f. Ensured that the command-and-signal paragraph specified the following: (1) Command. (a) Command post (CP) and key leader locations during the operation and planned movements. (b) Locations and planned movements of higher C2. (c) The logistical chain of command. (2) Signal. (a) The communication/signal differences not covered in the standing operating procedure (SOP). (b) The critical reporting requirements not covered in the SOP. (c) The designated nets for mission and routine reports.		
* 2. The commander ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to subordinate elements.		
* 3. The commander ensures that the order is disseminated/briefed in time to satisfy the one-third/two-thirds rule (allowing subordinates two-thirds of the available time).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex
05-2-0413	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-3-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Platoon)
05-3-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Operations and Plans
Command Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026)
(FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer element is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and in a secure area. The TOC is transferring engineer information to other elements (higher headquarters [HQ] and adjacent and subordinate units). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Higher HQ and adjacent and subordinate elements have continuous, accurate, and timely engineer information that will have an impact on their operations. The digital elements are sending and receiving reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. All reports sent via digital means must also be followed up with the appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms according to the element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and standardization agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The battalion TOC Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) receives engineer information. **NOTE: The digital elements maintain a message log using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) that is available according to the elements TACSOP.** a. Logged information in a message log. b. Requested clarification of information received from the submitting element. c. Maintained a file copy of all hard copy reports. 2. The S2 or S3 analyzes the information received and disseminates it to the appropriate action element within the battalion TOC. a. Disseminated personnel and administration information to the Adjutant (US Army) (S1). b. Disseminated intelligence and weather information to the S2. c. Disseminated operations and maneuver information to the S3. d. Disseminated logistics and maintenance information to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). e. Disseminated command-related information (guidance, tactical decisions, and critical resources) to the commanding officer (CO) or executive officer (XO) of the command group. f. Disseminated information to the action elements using the reporting procedures on the Maneuver Control System (MCS) according to the battalion standing operating procedure (SOP). g. Disseminated information copies to the other elements, as required. 3. The action element(s) analyzes information. a. Determined the content validity and filtered out noncritical information. b. Determined the importance of the information to the operation. c. Determined the required actions, coordination, and reports.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The action element(s) acts on the information. a. Conducted required coordination with engineer and maneuver elements. b. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and the MCS. c. Determined the course of action (COA). d. Selected the COA. e. Obtained guidance or concurrence on the selected COA from relevant elements and the command group, when needed. f. Implemented the COA. g. Prepared the required reports according to the battalion SOP. h. Provided the S2 or S3 with an action summary and all the appropriate reports according to the battalion SOP. 5. The S2 or S3 prepares and submits reports and engineer information. a. Prepared the reports for transmission to subordinate elements and the battalion staff. Transmitted and submitted the reports according to the battalion SOP using the MCS. b. Prepared, transmitted, and submitted reports to higher HQ, the supported maneuver command, and the adjacent elements according to the higher HQ SOP using the MCS. c. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs on the MCS, as required. d. Submitted reports to the appropriate elements and HQ using the MCS. e. Logged the transmission and submission of the report. f. Updated the command group using the fastest means of communications, the MCS or mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT), as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Communication Section
Tactical Section

TASK: Control Combined Arms Breaching (05-1-0048)
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer element is in support of a maneuver task force (TF) with an established command and control (C2) relationship in a contemporary operating environment. The brigade must conduct a deliberate attack due to enemy obstacle strongpoints and the failure of a hasty attack. The brigade commander designates the brigade engineer to be in charge of the breach force throughout the area of operations (AO). The course of action (COA) is determined; orders are disseminated; and support, breach, and assault forces have been task organized (Training and Evaluation Outline [T&EO] 5-1-0520). Multiple obstacles may need reduction. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The obstacles are reduced, lanes are created and marked, and the momentum of the attack is not degraded. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The brigade combat team (BCT) engineer and staff conduct rehearsals. a. Established a communication net for the breach force to facilitate C2. b. Ensured that the rehearsal site reflected the obstacle system and terrain as much as possible. c. Conducted a leader and key personnel walk-through. d. Included contingencies for counterattack (CATK); indirect enemy fires; air attacks (rotary- and fixed-wing); nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attacks; and possible situation obstacle emplacements. e. Ensured that everyone understood their role and the timeline of events, actions to be taken during a contingency, and actions taken after the reduction was complete. **NOTE: Usually a brigade deliberate breach requires creating several lanes simultaneously and may require the reduction of several obstacles simultaneously or in succession at multiple locations.**		
* 2. The BCT engineer positions himself where he can best observe, control, and report on the actions of the breach force.		
* 3. The staff engineer monitors the battle and assumes normal C2 functions for combat operations.		
* 4. The BCT engineer follows the breach timeline matrix, incorporating any last minute pertinent information and making any adjustments, ensuring that the synchronization of all aspects of the breach is closely monitored and controlled. **NOTE: The digital elements send and receive progress reports and update the digital overlay with lane locations according to the element tactical operations center standing operating procedure (TOCSOP).**		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Monitored the progress of the support force and its attempt to suppress and obscure the enemy closely in anticipation of committing the breach force. b. Moved the breach force into position and began the reduction, once suppression and obscuration were effective and the brigade commander had committed the breach force. Identified, reduced, proofed, marked, and reported lane locations and conditions during the reduction. c. Improved lanes and the marking of reduced obstacles per the execution matrix. d. Turned traffic control over to the military police (MP) per the execution matrix. e. Employed situational obstacles to deter CATKs and to provide supporting flank protection during the attack. f. Handed over the cleared lanes to lead elements of follow-on forces.		
* 5. The BCT engineer reports to the maneuver commander all actions of the breach force as each phase of the reduction effort is met.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0111	Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations
05-2-0125	Provide Support for Mobility Operations
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Operations and Plans

TASK: Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)
(FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been tasked with a mission that requires additional resources and augmentation support. Augmentation support is available. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion staff determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission and submits a request and then begins the coordination for logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached element. Digital elements perform collaborative planning; send requests, reports, and orders; and perform Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) functions, using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Digital elements perform collaborative planning, make requests, and send or receive reports using digital systems.		
1. The battalion staff performs mission analysis and determines resource requirements and availability during the estimate process. a. Determined resources required in time to accomplish the mission. b. Determined the availability of organic resources. c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation element(s), to include shortfalls, such as equipment maintenance.		
2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) submits a request for augmentation support. a. Requested augmentation support from higher headquarters (HQ) if not supporting a maneuver element. b. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ and the maneuver commander when supporting a maneuver unit. c. Submitted the request immediately after the estimate process was complete. d. Included the following information in the request: (1) Type of relationship (command or support). (2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed. (3) Length of time needed to accomplish the mission. (4) Mission of the battalion. (5) Mission of the augmentation support element.		
3. The battalion staff modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received. a. Prioritized the effort for the supporting element. b. Effected the coordination for logistical support based on the command or support relationship, such as food, fuel, and maintenance.		
4. The S3 coordinates the liaison of the augmentation element with the engineer company(s).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Determined the time, place, and attendance requirements for issuing the battalion operation order (OPORD) if not already issued. b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation element and the engineer company. 5. The battalion staff monitors the attached elements. a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required. b. Shifted assets as necessary. c. Inspected the quality of workmanship. d. Visited the element to maintain high morale. 6. The augmented unit staff terminates augmentation support. a. Accounted for equipment and personnel. b. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ. **Note: Reports are sent via FM or digital means according to the standing operating procedure (SOP) of the element.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion
Command Section
Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Assistant Brigade Engineer Section

TASK: Analyze Battlefield Information (05-1-7010)
(FM 5-71-3) (FM 34-1) (FM 34-130)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The commander's intent indicates the plan for the mission, providing known data concerning the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and his staff analyze intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products in order to make a tentative plan and initiate movement. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader and his staff analyze IPB products. **NOTE: The digital elements obtain intelligence information through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS).** a. Developed aspects of the terrain and enemy engineer activities that impacted on the plan. b. Determined the mission-essential tasks assigned to the TF or engineer elements, such as— (1) The concept of engineer operations to support the TF. (2) The task organization of engineer forces and the command or support relationship. (3) Allocations of mission resources to companies and teams. (4) Overlays and graphic control measures needed for obstacle control or breaching. (5) Additional coordinating instructions to companies and teams that are needed to synchronize the engineer effort. c. Developed facts and assumptions on— (1) Enemy engineer vulnerabilities. (2) Friendly engineer capabilities and critical requirements. (3) The IPB and engineer battlefield assessment (EBA) process, which is broken into three components. **NOTE: The components are the terrain analysis, enemy missions, and mobility/survivability (M/S) capabilities.** * 2. The commander and his staff determine the situation template of enemy engineer activities and locations, the tentative employment of specific engineer equipment, and the capabilities critical to the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Communication Section

TASK: Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)
(FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-33)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI), the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards exist, such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation. a. Secured radios in the mount. b. Connected audio accessories. c. Installed antennas. d. Performed before-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). e. Performed radio operational checks.		
2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets. a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI or SSI. b. Entered a radio net. c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).		
3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference. a. Recognized jamming or interference. b. Determined if the interference was internal or external. c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.		
4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM). a. Continued to operate. b. Increased the transmit power. c. Tuned the receiver for max signal. d. Relocated the antenna. e. Requested a change of frequency. f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports.		
5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Operated only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI/SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation). e. Ensured that the length was not more than 20 seconds per transmission and that the number of transmissions was at a minimum. f. Operated on the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Employed the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Complied with net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Operations and Plans
Tactical Section
Communication Section

TASK: Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)
(FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)
(FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team has been briefed and given extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area before going to the field location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SINCGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability. a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly. **WARNING: HIGH VOLTAGES EXIST AT CONNECTOR J1 ON THE MOUNTING ADAPTER. ENSURE THAT J1 IS COVERED OR CAPPED WHEN NOT IN USE.** b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack system only). c. Ensured that preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.		
* 2. The supervisor selects the site. a. Selected primary and alternate locations within the general site. b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline. c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment. d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.		
3. Net members perform premission checks for a SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening. a. Performed before-operation PMCS. b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only). c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (integrated communications security [ICOM] only). d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.		
4. The net control station (NCS) performs premission checks for the SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening. a. Performed preoperational PMCS. b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only). d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13. e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI/SSI. f. Loaded the cue frequency. g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency, as required. h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI/SSI. 5. The NCS opens the net. a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel. b. Issued and sent the electronic countercountermeasures [ECCM] electronic remote fill (ERF) instructions. c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call. d. Opened the net. e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called the missing net members. f. Repeated the cold start. g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON. 6. Net members enter the net. a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call. b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON. c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call. d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel. e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call. 7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method. a. Performed premission checks for an FH cold start. b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI/SSI. c. Initiated the cue call. d. Reported into the net. e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening. 8. Net members use proper radio procedures. a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum. b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate. c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies. d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. e. Operated on a random schedule. f. Adhered to net discipline. 9. Team members recognize different types of interference. a. Checked the RT signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting. **NOTE: If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.** b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms. 10. Team members initiate ECCM actions. a. Continued to operate. b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear. c. Reduced the transmission speed. d. Increased the transmitter power. e. Relocated the antenna.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).		
11. Team members extend the range of the radio station. a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability. b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method. c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.		
12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site. a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas. b. Performed preoperational PMCS. c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C. d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D. e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only). f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only). g. Cued the LNE using radio D. h. Stored the ERF into both radios. i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID. j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to RXMT.		
13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call. a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the net control interface (NCI) cue channel, as required. b. Switched to NRI MAN channel. c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel. d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.		
14. Team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net. a. Performed PMCS, as required. b. Performed fault isolation, as required. c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required. d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required. e. Completed the necessary entries in the maintenance record. f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.		
15. The NCS closes the net. a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions. b. Acknowledged the net members. c. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence. d. Performed after-operation PMCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration and Logistical
Administration/Logistical

TASK: Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A)
(FM 101-5) (FM 3-0)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is engaging in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters (HQ). The digital elements have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The battalion commander has issued planning guidance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The personnel estimate and annex of the OPORD are completed in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section prepares the personnel estimate. a. Obtained the commander's restated mission. b. Obtained intelligence information from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). c. Obtained tactical information from the commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Obtained logistical information from the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). e. Prepared the troop preparedness situation. f. Analyzed and compared courses of action. g. Developed conclusions. h. Presented conclusions to the commander. 2. The S1 section participates in the preparation process for the service support annex. a. Verified the battalion task organization. b. Updated task force (TF) battle rosters and personnel strength (PS) charts to reflect the new task organization. c. Advised the commander and staff on TF PS. d. Developed estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates. e. Coordinated the location of medical-support facilities and evacuation routes and procedures. f. Provided medical-support information to staff members in support of staff planning. g. Relayed tactical and operational information and command directives to medical-support units. h. Verified casualty data and strength information with the battalion aid station. i. Established requirements and procedures for strength accounting, replacements, and casualty reporting. j. Coordinated and designated temporary enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and civilian detainee collection points and outlined evacuation procedures. k. Prepared the personnel portion of paragraph 4 (service support) of the OPORD. l. Briefed the task organization and personnel portions of the OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of the unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission and the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
Module 1			
6	Receive a WO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
Module 2			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		

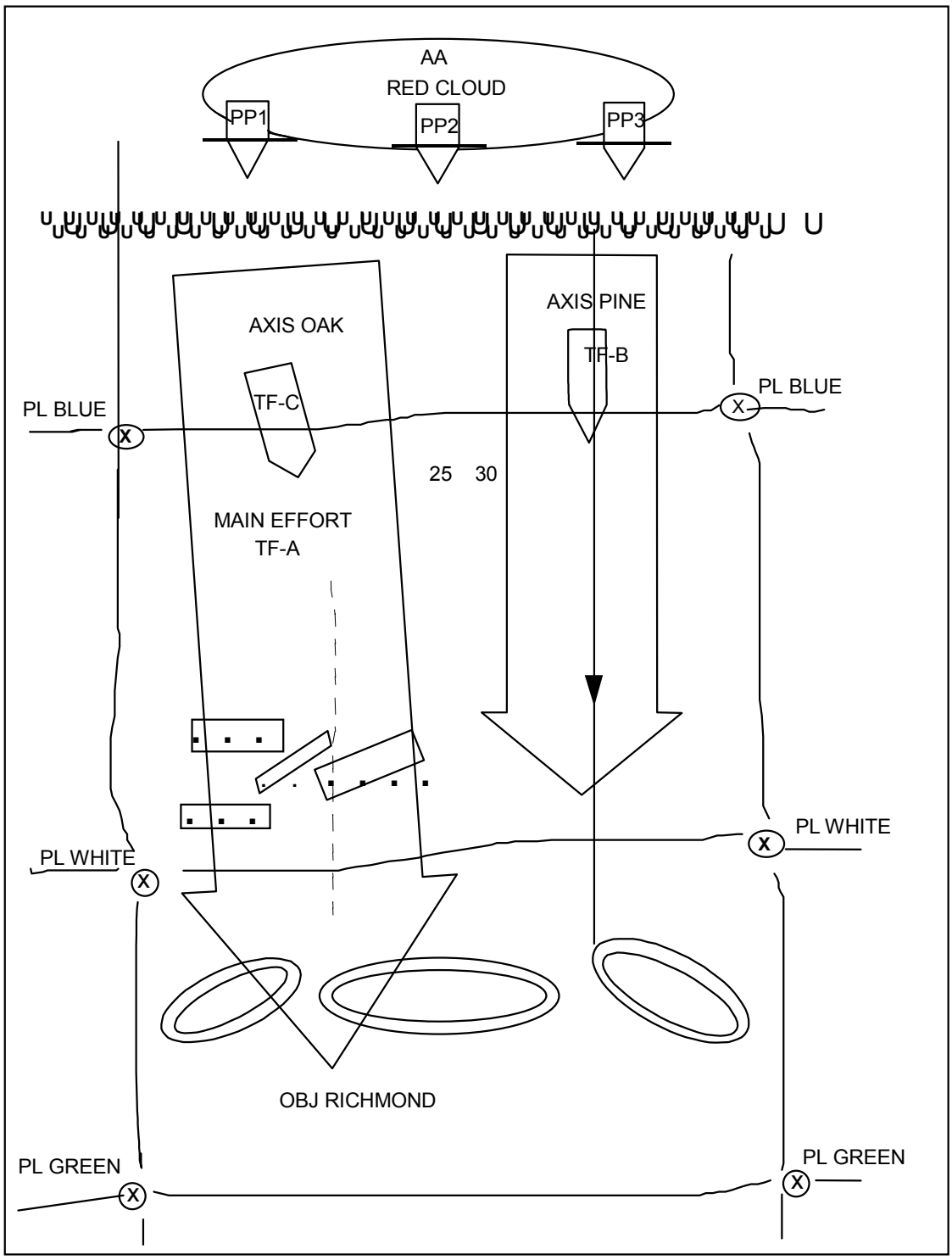


Figure 6-1. Sample Graphic Illustration Scenario

a. Identify the missions for evaluating each element from Figure 2-2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (Figure 6-2).

Unit: ____ Date: ______________________

Number	**Unit Mission/Task**	**Section/ Squad**	**Section/ Squad**	**Section/ Squad**	**Section/ Squad**	**Unit Overall Rating and Remarks**
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	

NOTE: If more space is required for remarks, use the back side of this form.

Figure 6-2. Sample Unit Proficiency Work Sheet

b. List each mission on a separate task summary sheet (Figure 6-3).

TASK SUMMARY SHEET

Mission:

Task Titles	T&EO Number	Evaluation	
		GO	NO-GO

Observer/controller signature: _____

NOTE: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. O/C comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

Figure 6-3. Sample Task Summary Sheet

c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.

d. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario (Table 6-1). Group the selected missions and tasks into parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. Resourcing and Planning. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001			
Ammunition	**DODIC**	**Estimated Basic Load**	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (See note below.)			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
MILES Equipment	**Company**	**Evaluators**	**OPFOR**
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the exercise.			

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

(1) Senior O/C.

(2) Staff O/C.

(3) Operations O/C.

(4) Administration O/C.

(5) Logistics O/C.

(6) NBC O/C.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports force protection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating, and should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in reports and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes—

(1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.

(2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this MTP.

(3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

(4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. These include—

(a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the O/Cs folders.

(b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.

(c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.

(d) Safety procedures.

(e) Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.

(f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation. This includes war-gaming all items on the master events list in order of occurrence and reviewing each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior NCO who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities and must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. The training includes—

(1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.

(2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.

(3) OPFOR tasks and standards.

(4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.

(5) C2.

(6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

a. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

b. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is developed by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

a. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

Step 1. Identify the MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

Step 2. Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performances of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation plan task.

Step 3. Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

Step 4. Record the overall unit capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

- **GO.** The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standard.
- **NO-GO.** The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

b. Use other locally designed reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit overall final rating. The reports listed below can be used to collect the information.

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report is used to record personnel and equipment status.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-6). This report is used to record information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

UNIT DATA SHEET

1. Unit designation: Date:

2. Unit leaders (circle the most appropriate selection):

Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive Officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S3	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion Maintenance Officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19

3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):

4. Equipment shortages (major items):

5. Comments:

Observer/controller signature:

Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET
Exercise number and description:
Date and time the exercise started:
Date and time the exercise ended:
1. Weather conditions (circle the appropriate description): Clear Partly Cloudy Cloudy Hazy Rain Snow Fog Other: Temperature:
2. Ground conditions (circle the appropriate description): Dry Wet Ice Snow Other:
3. Light conditions (circle the appropriate description): Day Night Moon phase: None 1/4 1/2 3/4 Full Average range of visibility due to light:
4. Terrain (circle the appropriate description): Flat Rolling Mountains Jungle Desert Urban Arctic Other: Top soil: Sandy Rocky Clay Other: Average range of visibility due to terrain:
5. Remarks:

Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title or Task Number	**Date and Time of Enemy Contact**	**Friendly KIA/WIA**	**Enemy KIA/WIA**	**Friendly Vehicles Destroyed**	**Enemy Vehicles Destroyed**
Comments:					

Figure 6-6. Sample Personnel and Equipment Loss Report

6-8. Preparing After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR follows these guidelines:

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also why it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TC) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

OPERATION ORDER

(classification)
FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY

Operation Order _____ 20_____ Copy ___ of ___ copies
25th Engineer Battalion

Task Organization:

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.

(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.

(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.

(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery is in direct support.

2. MISSION. The TFs conduct a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.

(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs AA Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the enemy main body so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy the enemy. It is necessary to destroy enemy combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.

(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).

Figure A-1. Sample OPORD

(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.

b. Subunit Missions (as required).

c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report crossing of the PLs.

(4) Additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current SOI.

(2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY
(classification)

Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)

APPENDIX B

B-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and has changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US or the former Soviet republics or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

B-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into the rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into the rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

B-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

B-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (mortars, howitzers, gun-howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. For example, in the past, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies,

civil wars, or border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

B-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage-taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

B-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

APPENDIX C

Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
Length		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
Volume		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
Weight		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Metric Units	**Multiplied By**	**Equals US Units**
Length		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
Volume		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
Weight		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

GLOSSARY

1LT
first lieutenant

1SG
first sergeant

5 Ss and T
search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag

AA
avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly

AAR
after-action review; after-action report

ABCS
Army Battle Command System

ABE
assistant brigade engineer

ABF
attack by fire (position)

AC
active component; alternating current

ADA
air defense artillery

ADC
area damage control

AI
air interdiction; area of interest

ALOC
Administrative Logistical Operations Center

AO
area of operations

AOAP
Army Oil Analysis Program

APC
armored personnel carrier

AR
Army regulation; armor; angle of repose

ARTEP
Army Training and Evaluation Program

ASAS
All-Source Analysis System

AT
antiterrorism; antitank

ATTN
attention

ATWESS
antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

BCT
basic combat training; brigade combat team; battle coordination team

BDA
battle damage assessment

BDAR
battle damage assessment and repair

BLTM
battalion level training model

BMO
battalion maintenance officer

BMS
battalion maintenance sergeant

BMT
battalion maintenance technician

BOS
battlefield operating system

BP
battle position; building pedestal (single story only); baseplate (single story and double story)

BSA
brigade support area

C2
command and control

C2SRS
Command and Control Strength Reporting System

CALFEX
combined arms live-fire exercise

CAM
Chemical Agent Monitor

CAS
casualty; close air support

CATK
counterattack

CATS
combined arms training strategy

CDM
chemical downwind message

CFX
command field exercise

CFZ
critical friendly zone

CHS
combat health support

CMT
company maintenance team; common military training

CO
commissioned officer; carbon monoxide; commanding officer; company

COA
course of action

COMEX
communications exercise

COMSEC
communications security

CONUS
continental United States

COP
common operational picture

CP
command post; checkpoint

CPT
captain

CPX
command post exercise

CS
combat support; Costa Rica; o-clorobenzylidine malononitrile

CSS
combat service support

CSSCS
Combat Service Support Control System

DA
Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action

DA Form
Department of the Army Form

DA Pam
Department of the Army Pamphlet

DD
Department of Defense

DENTAC
dental activity

DMA
Defense Mapping Agency

DMOS
duty military occupational specialty

DOD
Department of Defense

DODIC
Department of Defense identification code

DRS
direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System

DS
direct support; double story

DTSS
Digital Topographic Support System

EA
each; engagement area

EBA
engineer battlefield assessment

ECCM
electronic countercountermeasures

EEFI
essential elements of friendly information

EEI
essential elements of information

EETI
essential elements of terrain information; essential elements of threat information

ENDEX
end of exercise

EOD
explosive ordnance disposal

EPW
enemy prisoner of war

ERF
electronic remote fill; electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM) remote fill

EW
electronic warfare

FBCB2
Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below

FH
field hospital; frequency hopping

fig
figure

FIST
fire support team

FM
field manual; frequency-modulated; frequency modulation

FPF
final protective fire; final protection fires

FPOL
forward passage of lines

FRAGO
fragmentary order

FS
fire support; foresight; Fort Sill

FSB
forward support battalion

FSC
Finance Support Command; federal supply catalog

FSO
fire support officer; food service officer

FST
field sanitation team; fire support team

FTX
field training exercise

G1
Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel)

G2
Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence)

GRREG
graves registration

GRS
general religious support

GS
general support; geared steer; gear steer

GTA
graphic training aid

HHC
headquarters and headquarters company

HN
host nation

HQ
headquarters

HVT
high-value target

ICOM
imbedded communications; Intercommunications System; integrated communications security

IDS
intermediate direct support

INTREP
intelligence report

INTSUM
intelligence summary

IPB
intelligence preparation of the battlefield; intelligence preparation of the battlespace

IR
infrared; intelligence requirements

KIA
killed in action

LCE
load-carrying equipment

LES
leave and earnings statement

LNE
late net entry

LOGPAC
logistics package; logistical package

LOI
letter of instruction

LRP
logistics release point

LTC
lieutenant colonel

M/S
mobility/survivability

MACOM
major Army command

MAJ
major

MANSCEN
Maneuver Support Center

MAPEX
map exercise

MCM
materiel-change management; Manual for Courts-Martial

MCOO
modified combined obstacle overlay

MCP
maintenance collection point

MCS
Maneuver Control System

MCSR
materiel condition status report

MDI
modernized demolition initiator

MEDDAC
medical department activity

MEDEVAC
medical evacuation

METL
mission-essential task list

METT-T
mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available (Army); mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, and time available (USMC)

METT-TC
mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

MICLIC
mine clearing line charge

MIJI
meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

MILES
Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

MLC
military load classification; military load class

mm
millimeter(s)

MO
Missouri; monthly

MOPP
mission-oriented protective posture

MOPP2
mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

MOPP4
mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

MOS
military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

MP
military police

MSR
main supply route

MSRT
mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal

MST
maintenance support team

MTOE
modified table(s) of organization and equipment; modification table of organization and equipment

MTP
mission training plan; MOS training plan

NAI
named area of interest

NATO
North Atlantic Treaty Organization

NBC
nuclear, biological, and chemical

NBC 1 Report
Observer's Initial Report. This report is used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).

NBC 4 Report
Monitoring and Survey Report. This report is used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

NBC 5 Report
Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, the division prepares an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

NCI
net control interface

NCO
noncommissioned officer

NCOER
noncommissioned officer evaluation report

NCOIC
noncommissioned officer in charge

NCS
net control station

non-ICOM
nonintegrated communications security

NPA
net pay advice

NRI
net radio interface

O/C
observer/controller

OBJ
objective

OBSTINTEL
obstacle intelligence

OCOKA
observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenue of approach

OEG
operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance

OIC
officer in charge

OP
observation post; operational procedure

OPCON
operational control

OPFOR
opposing forces

OPLAN
operation plan

OPORD
operation order

OPSEC
operations security

OPTEMPO
operational tempo; operating tempo

OR
operational readiness

P
needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature

PAC
personnel and administration center

pam
pamphlet

PCC
precombat check

PCI
photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection

PDDE
power-driven decontamination equipment

PDS
personnel daily summary

PIR
priority intelligence requirements

PL
phase line; plastic limit; Poland

PLL
prescribed load list

PM
provost marshal; program manager; preventive maintenance

PMCS
preventive-maintenance checks and services

PMOS
primary military occupational specialty

POL
petroleum, oils, and lubricants

POM
preparation for oversea movement; program objective memorandum

POP
point of penetration

POV
privately owned vehicle

PRR
personnel requirements report

PS
personnel strength; personnel status; pull switch

PSC
personnel service company

PSNCO
personnel staff noncommissioned officer

PSR
personnel status report

PVNTMED
preventive medicine

R&S
reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and surveillance

radiac
radiation, detection, indication, and computation

RATELO
radiotelephone operator

RC
rapid cure; reserve component

reg
Regiment; regulation; register

RES
radiation exposure status

RFL
restrictive fire line

ROE
rules of engagement

RP
Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point; red phosphorus

RT
radius of target; receiver/transmitter

RTI
Regional Training Institute

RXMT
retransmit

S1
Adjutant (US Army)

S2
Intelligence Officer (US Army)

S3
Operations and Training Officer (US Army)

S4
Supply Officer (US Army)

SA
semiannually; situational awareness

SATRAN
satellite transmission

SATS
Standard Army Training System

SAW
squad automatic weapon

SB
supply bulletin; switchboard

SBF
support by fire

SCATMINE
scatterable mine

SCI
sensitive compartmented-information

SCPE
simplified collective-protection equipment

SF
standard form

SIDPERS
Standard Installation/Division Personnel System

SIG
signal

SINCGARS
Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System

SITEMP
situational template

SITMAP
situation map

SITREP
situation report

SJA
Staff Judge Advocate

SOEO
scheme of engineer operations

SOI
signal operation instructions

SOP
standing operating procedure

SOSR
suppress, obscure, secure, and reduce

SOSRA
suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault

SP
start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain

SPOTREP
spot report

SSI
standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

STANAG
standardization agreement

STB
supertropical bleach

STP
soldier training publication

STRAC
Standards in Training Commission

STX
situational training exercise

T
trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station; time; tracked

T&E
test and evaluation; traversing and elevating

T&EO
training and evaluation outline

TACCS
Tactical Army Combat Service Support (CSS) Computer System

TACSOP
tactical standing operating procedure

TAI
targeted area of interest; tactical area of interest

TAMMS
The Army Maintenance Management System

TC
technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

TEK
traffic encryption key

TEWT
tactical exercise without troops

TF
task force; total float

TM
team; technical manual; trademark

TNT
trinitrotoluene

TOC
tactical operations center

TOCSOP
tactical operations center standing operating procedure

TOE
table(s) of organization and equipment

TRADOC
United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

TRP
target reference point; traffic regulation plan

TSEC
transmission security

TSK
transmission security key

TVA
target-value analysis

U
unclassified; up; untrained; unlocked

UCMJ
Uniform Code of Military Justice

UMCP
unit maintenance collection point

UMT
unit ministry team

UPW
unit proficiency work sheet

US
United States

USA
United States of America; United States Army

USAREUR
United States Army, Europe

USMTF
United States message text format

UXO
unexploded ordnance

WAM
wide-area munition; wide area mine

WESTCOM
United States Army, Western Command

WIA
wounded in action

WO
warrant officer; warning order

XO
executive officer

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 15-6	Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers. 11 May 1988
AR 190-47	The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996
AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. 10 June 2003
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973
AR 220-15	Journals and Journal Files. 1 December 1983
AR 25-50	Preparing and Managing Correspondence. 3 June 2002
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 27-10	Military Justice. 6 September 2002
AR 27-20	Claims. 14 November 2002
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-20	Army Command Policy. 13 May 2002
AR 600-38	Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988
AR 600-8	Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. 20 October 1994
AR 600-8-14	Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 20 December 2002
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). 30 October 1987
AR 600-85	Army Substance Abuse Program (ASAP). 1 October 2001
AR 600-8-8	The Total Army Sponsorship Program. 1 July 1993
AR 635-200	Enlisted Personnel. 1 November 2000
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994

Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 5-332-68-MTP	Headquarters, Headquarters Detachment, Engineer Brigade. 8 July 2003
ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Engineer Brigade, Heavy Division, Battalion Staff. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-335-DRILL	Engineer Drills. 11 January 2001

ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Heavy Division.
ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Heavy Division.
ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Heavy Division.

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1594	Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962
DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974
DA FORM 2166-8	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 2001
DA FORM 2166-8-1	Noncommissioned Officer Counseling Checklist/Record. 1 October 2001
DA FORM 31	Request and Authority for Leave (EGA). 1 September 1993
DA FORM 3318	Records of Demands - Title Insert. 1 January 1982
DA FORM 3955	Change of Address and Directory Card. 1 February 1979
DA FORM 638	Recommendation for Award. 1 November 1994
DA FORM 647	Personnel Register. 1 August 1978
DA FORM 67-9	Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 1997

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 600-8-2	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Personnel Service Center Level Procedures. 1 August 1986
DA PAM 600-8-23	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Data Base Management Procedures. 1 April 1992
DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

Department of Defense Publications

DD FORM 1348	DOD Single Line Item Requisition System Document (Manual). 1 July 1991
DD FORM 1348M	DOD Single Line Item Requisition System Document (Mechanical). 1 March 1974
DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
DOD REG 5500.7-R	Standards of Conduct. 30 August 1993

Field Manuals

FM 100-10	Combat Service Support. 3 October 1995
FM 100-13	Battlefield Coordination Detachment (BCD). 5 September 1996
FM 100-16	Army Operational Support. 31 May 1995
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996
FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992
FM 10-27	General Supply in Theater of Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-4	Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000

FM 1-05	Religious Support. 18 April 2003
FM 10-52	Water Supply in Theaters of Operations. 11 July 1990
FM 11-41	Signal Support: Echelons Corps and Below (ECB). 18 December 1991
FM 11-50	Combat Communications Within the Division (Heavy & Light). 4 April 1991
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 14-100	Financial Management Operations. 7 May 1997
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-31	Topographic Symbols. 19 June 1961
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 3-0	Operations. 14 June 2001
FM 3-11	Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-11.11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001
FM 3-19.4	Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001
FM 3-21.71	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002
FM 3-21.91	Tactical Employment of Antiarmor Platoons and Companies. 23 December 2002
FM 3-25.26	Map Reading and Land Navigation. 20 July 2001
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994
FM 34-2	Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990
FM 34-5	Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations. 29 July 1994
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
FM 34-80	Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 15 April 1986
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
FM 3-90.1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 9 December 2002

FM 3-90.2	The Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force. 11 June 2003
FM 4-02	Force Health Protection in a Global Environment. 13 February 2003
FM 4-02.6	The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 1 August 2002
FM 4-25.12	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 25 January 2002
FM 4-30.13	Ammunition Handbook: Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Munitions Handlers. 1 March 2001
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-102	Countermobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-410	Military Soils Engineering. 23 December 1992
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994
FM 5-480	Port Construction and Repair. 12 December 1990
FM 55-1	Transportation Operations. 3 October 1995
FM 55-20	Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations. 1 June 2000
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-100	Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 5-7-30	Brigade Engineer and Engineer Company Combat Operations (Airborne, Air Assault, Light). 28 December 1994
FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993
FM 63-11	Logistics Support Element Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 8 October 1996
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991
FM 63-20	Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990
FM 63-21	Main Support Battalion. 7 August 1990
FM 63-3	Corps Support Command. 30 September 1993
FM 7-0	Training the Force. 22 October 2002
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-20	The Infantry Battalion. 6 April 1992
FM 7-22.7	The Army Noncommissioned Officer Guide. 23 December 2002
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000
FM 8-10-9	Combat Health Logistics in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 3 October 1995

FM 8-51	Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995

Graphic Training Aids

GTA 05-02-014	How to Order a Map. 1 February 2001

Other Product Types

DD FORM 457	Investigating Officer's Report. 29 August 1984
SF 344	Multiuse Standard Requisitioning/Issue System Document. January 1972.
TRADOC PAM 11-9	Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990

Soldier Training Publications

STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Levels 2/3/4, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 28 March 2003
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	MOS 62G, Quarrying Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 5 May 1986

Technical Manuals

TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653)). 15 June 1990
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983

Training Circulars

TC 12-17	Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988
TC 25-20	A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993
TC 25-6	Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Field Manuals

FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993

FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991
FM 63-20	Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990

Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER _____ DATE _____

MTP TITLE _____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire for your records. Mail to: Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Building 3200, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (for example, company commander or platoon sergeant)?

_____

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component?

   a. Active component
   b. Reserve component

5. Where is your unit?

   a. Continental United States (CONUS)
   b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
   c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
   d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
   e. Other (specify)
      _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel that this MTP has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

   a. Has made training worse
   b. Has made training better
   c. Has had no affect on training
   d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

7. How easy is the MTP to use, compared to other training products?

   a. Harder
   b. Easier
   c. About the same
   d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training
b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans
d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises
e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation
g. Do not know or do not have an opinion

8. What part of the MTP was least useful? _____

9. What part of the MTP was most useful? _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

_____

_____

11. What part of the MTP was the easiest to understand?

_____

_____

12. The training exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
b. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit training requirements.
c. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit training requirements.
d. They help but only provide between 51 and 80 percent of my unit training requirements.
e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STXs be added or deleted from the MTP?

_____

_____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

a. Have too many pages
b. Are hard to read and understand
c. Need more illustrations
d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
e. Need more information on leader training
f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
g. Need more information on support and resources
h. Need more information on the elements that are normally attached
i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

    a. Have too many pages
    b. Are hard to read and understand
    c. Need more illustrations
    d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
    e. Need more information on leader training
    f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
    g. Need more information on support and resources
    h. Need more information on normally attached elements
    i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
    j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally? _____

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

    a. Leave it out altogether
    b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises
    c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation
    d. Make standards less detailed
    e. Make standards more detailed
    f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime
    g. Do not change; chapter is fine
    h. Do not know or do not have an opinion

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

    a. Leave it out altogether
    b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises
    c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation
    d. Make standards less detailed
    e. Make standards more detailed
    f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime
    g. Do not change; chapter is fine
    h. Do not know or do not have an opinion

19. Additional comments:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

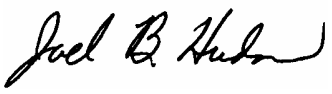
_____

ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP
23 SEPTEMBER 2003

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

PETER J. SCHOOMAKER
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0323308

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic Means Only.

PIN: 081011-000